The Mac Idiot Book

Apple Macintosh Graphics, Word, Page, and Data Processing from Square One

by William W. Flint
# The Mac\textsuperscript{\textregistered} Idiot Book

## Table of Contents

Read First: What the Right Mac Software can do for you ......................................... ii
Read Second: How to Use this Book ........................................................................ iv

**MacPaint** ................................................................................................................. 1

**Thunderscan** ........................................................................................................... 21

**MacDraw** ................................................................................................................. 29

**SuperPaint** ............................................................................................................. 45

**MacWrite** ............................................................................................................... 71

**Word** ....................................................................................................................... 85

**ReadySetGo** ........................................................................................................... 109

**Excel** ....................................................................................................................... 125

**File** .......................................................................................................................... 149

**BASIC** ..................................................................................................................... 161

**The Desktop** ......................................................................................................... 171

**How to Copy** .......................................................................................................... 187

**Hurry up Mac** ......................................................................................................... 195

**Integrating Multiple Applications** .......................................................................... 205

**MacDisasters** ......................................................................................................... 215

**ImageWriter** ......................................................................................................... 225

**LaserWriter and AppleTalk** ..................................................................................... 235

**Appendix**

**Historical Background** .......................................................................................... 247

**MacPaint vs MacDraw vs SuperPaint** .................................................................... 249

**MacWrite vs Word vs RSG** ..................................................................................... 251

**File vs Excel** .......................................................................................................... 253

**Fonts** ......................................................................................................................... 255

**Desk Accessories** .................................................................................................. 263

**Index** ......................................................................................................................... 269
The MacIdiot Book
Read First: What the right Mac software can do for you....

Software tells a computer how to do things. A particular piece of software is called an application. Mac applications come on 3.5" plastic disks that look like this: 🎨. A piece of work created with an application is called a document.

When you are ready to begin, you turn Mac on, and insert the disk in the slot under his face.

---

**Graphics**

When you use the computer to draw pictures you are doing graphics. MacPaint, MacDraw, and SuperPaint are graphics applications for the Mac. They can draw beautiful pictures to be electronically "pasted" into other documents.

Mac remembers MacPaint pictures in terms of little dots called pixels.

Mac remembers MacDraw pictures in terms of sets of lines called objects.

SuperPaint is a superior synthesis of the two.

The differences are further discussed in the appendix.

---

**Word Processing**

When you use the computer to write you are doing word processing. MacWrite and Word are two different word processing applications for the Mac.

MacWrite is a little easier to learn and use.

Word 3.0 does more than MacWrite. Most of this book was written using Word.

The differences are further discussed in the appendix.

---

**Page Processing**

Putting processed words and graphics together in a multi-column newspaper, poster, or newsletter is called page processing.

This very page was set up using ReadySetGo 3.0 (RSG), an excellent page processor.

---

**Data Processing**

When you use Mac to manipulate numbers, or organize, update, and store information which might be kept in card files, tables or lists, it is called data processing. Excel and File are data processing applications.

Excel can manipulate massive quantities of words and numbers.

Excel can use the numbers to make attractive graphs, tables, and charts for use in other documents.

You can use File or other database applications to organize, update, and store types of information which might also be kept in card files, tables or lists. This information can be accessed, sorted, and printed according to any criteria you want to use.
The Mac

Idiot Book
Read Second: How to Use this Book

1. Get a 3.5" Macintosh disk containing an application you would like to learn.

Also, you may need to get three or more blank 3.5" disks or 3.5" disks which you don't mind erasing, and the Mac Plus or 512 Enhanced System Tools disk with finder 5.3 or better. If you don't have System Tools, you may be able to talk your Apple dealer or a Mac owner into putting a copy of System Tools onto one of your blank disks. (Any of the first nine chapters will explain how to tell whether or not you have finder 5.3 or better.) You may need the blank disks to make copies (backups) of your applications and your work. You may need the System Tools to update and modify the application copies to suit your particular needs. The "How to Copy" chapter tells you how to copy and modify your application master disk to make it usable. A copied, modified version of an application disk is called a work disk. If someone has already blessed you with a work disk, you don't need to do "How to Copy" immediately; but...

You will eventually need to make backups because disks "crash" from time to time; and you don't want a disk that crashes to be your only copy of an a document you have spent hours creating, or an application master disk. If you do not consistently make backups for everything you do on the Mac, you will be very sorry, sooner or later.

2. Find a Macintosh computer you can use.

Without a working Mac in front of you, much of what you read in this book will be incomprehensible.

Also, a second external disk drive is not mandatory, but it will often make your computing life easier. A printer will be absolutely essential when you come to the point where you want to print what you have created.

3. Turn to the chapter for the application you obtained in step 1.

4. Do what the chapter tells you to do.

Do what the book tells you to do, when it tells you to do it; don't try to read the book like a novel. The book makes sense only if you do what it tells you to do, when it tells you to do it.

5. Give yourself time to "play" with an application.

When you get to the end of a chapter, take the time to play and experiment with what you have learned. "Play" is essential to mastering any computer, and you can't hurt Mac with normal mouse and keyboard activity.

"The Desktop" chapter contains a general introduction to the Mac, and it will tell you some other essential details you will need sooner or later. The six chapters after "The Desktop" contain more Mac background information. Read them when you feel the need.
This chapter assumes that you want to do "freehand" computer sketches or drawings that can be "erased" and modified one little bit at a time; or you want to modify pictures that have been created by some other means.¹

1. In order to get started, you'll need a Macintosh computer, and a work disk with MacPaint on it. (If your only copy of MacPaint is a master disk, you need to study the "How to Copy" chapter first, and make a second work disk copy. It is dangerous to use your only copy of an application: what will you do if you damage it?)

   a.) Connect the power cord and mouse to the back of the Mac. If you have an ImageWriter printer, or an external disk drive, or you have access to an AppleTalk system, connect them too. Study the little icons (pictures) above the connectors in the back of the Mac: they will help you to decide which peripheral (accessory) connects where. (If you use it, the AppleTalk connector must be plugged into the port below the printer icon.) Plug your Mac into a surge protector or a grounded (three prong) wall outlet.

   b.) Plug the keyboard into the jack at the base of the front of the Mac. Make sure the keyboard's plugs are right side up when you insert them, or you will bend the keyboard plug contacts.

   c.) Turn it on. The off-on switch is just above the power cord connection in the back. The Mac will "beep" when you turn it on.

   d.) Adjust the brightness. You can feel the knurled brightness knob under the ledge just below the apple logo, on the lower left front side of the computer. Don't turn the brightness any higher than necessary to see comfortably. The lower you keep the brightness, the longer the "picture tube" will last.

2. Hold the MacPaint work disk the way it is in this little picture: but with your right thumb over the label. Slide it all the way into the disc slot below the screen, until it snaps in and the disc drive starts to click and hum.

The computer is gathering system information from the disk which is necessary for its operation; this process is sometimes called "booting the system." Any disk that "boots the system" is called a startup disk. A startup disk must have a system file on it. If Mac spits the disk out when you try to insert it, it's because the disk doesn't have a system file, or the disk is defective.)

¹ MacPaint also allows you to modify pictures commercially created by graphics software vendors; modify real pictures electronically copied using Thunderscan; or modify "photos" of the computer screen created by pressing -shift-3.
After about 18 seconds, the disk drive will stop and the screen will look like this:

The menu bar containing the words **File** **Edit** **View** **Special** is across the top of the screen. The **desktop**, which is the rest of the screen below the menu bar, should be blank except for the **disk icon** and **trash icon** on the right side. (If the desktop looks instead like the screen diagram below, no harm has been done. Someone left it that way when they last quit.)

3. There should be a **pointer** somewhere on the screen. The pointer moves around on the computer desktop when you roll the mouse around on a real table top. Move the mouse to position the tip of the pointer in the center of the disk icon and "double-click" (tickaticka) the mouse button without moving the mouse. This **opens** the disk's **directory window**; and now your screen should look something like this:

The icons in the **directory window** above represent the computer files which are recorded on the disk:
a.) The application icons represent files which tell the computer how to do something; in this case, how to do MacPaint graphics.

b.) Icons with a "dog-earned" (bent-over) corner represent documents which you create with applications like MacPaint.

c.) The system folder contains the System which tells Mac how to be a computer. The system also holds the fonts (type faces); and the desk accessories which are discussed int the appendix. Double-click the System Folder, and open it up:

d.) The Finder creates the desktop and the icons which allow you to find your way around in the Mac.

e.) The Clipboard File is an electronic "clipboard" which allows you to "carry" words or pictures from one document to another. The clipboard will only hold one picture at a time.

f.) The Scrapbook File is a place you can store words and pictures to use over and over in different documents. The scrapbook will hold many different pictures at once.

g.) The LaserWriter and ImageWriter are printer "drivers." If you want the computer to print documents on paper, you must have a driver for the printer you want to use. If you will be the first to use a LaserWriter printer after it has been turned on in the morning, you will also need a Laser Prep. If the printer driver you want is missing, see the "How to Copy" chapter.
4. Close the **system folder** window by putting the tip of the pointer in the **close box**, and clicking once, without moving the mouse. (This is called "**clicking on**" the close box.)

![Diagram of window with labels: title bar, close box, zoom box, size box, etc.]

**Note:** The box in the lower right corner of each window is called a "**Size Box**." If you put the tip of the pointer in it, and then hold the mouse button down while you "**drag**" the size box, you can change the shape of the window. Also, you can move the entire window by using this same strategy to "**click and drag**" the title bar around. This manipulation of windows can be quite useful when you are trying to arrange things so that you can see the contents of more than one window at once. Some windows have a "**zoom**" box in the their upper right corner. If you click on it, it will "**toggle**" the window between full size, and some other size you may have selected with the "**Size Box.**"

5. Click and hold the mouse button, while you attempt to drag down the word **View** in the menu bar. A list should appear beneath it. The word **View** will not drag, but as you pull the pointer down, each line in the list is highlighted (blackened) in sequence. When the line **by Size** is highlighted, release the mouse button. (This process is called "**pulling down**" **View to by Size**.) The icons in the directory window should change into a list of the files and applications arranged in order of size, largest first. (The size is measured in "k." You may have to adjust the size box to see it.) If you wish, you can instead rearrange the list alphabetically by pulling down **View to by Name**, etc. Try it, then change the window back to **by Icon**.

6. The **Apple menu**, **Finder**, lists **desk accessories** on your disk, such as the **Scrapbook** and **Chooser**. Use **Chooser** before you begin, to prepare Mac for the kind of printing he will do when you are ready to print your creation: pull down **Finder** to **Chooser**. When the Chooser window appears....

   a.) If you will be using a LaserWriter or an ImageWriter connected to the AppleTalk network, click on the "active" button, the printer icon, and the printer's name, if they do not "highlight" when you click on them, then something is wrong.
If the printer icon isn’t there, you need to go back to step 3g. If the printer’s name isn’t there, or if it refuses to highlight (white print on black) when you click on it, then the printer is not turned on; or the printer and (or) your Mac are not connected to the AppleTalk network.

b.) If you will be printing on an ImageWriter connected to your Mac only, click the "Inactive" button for AppleTalk; then click on the ImageWriter icon, and click on the icon of the printer port to which the printer is connected. You can tell which port by looking to see where the ImageWriter plugs into Mac’s back.

c.) Click the Chooser’s close box.

Note: If your Chooser doesn’t look like the one in the diagram, pull down ⌘ to About the Finder. A little card should appear that tells you the finder is number 5.3. (If it’s not, you need to replace the system, finder, and printer driver icons. "How to Copy" tells how to do this.) Put the little card away by clicking on it.
7. Double click the **MacPaint** application icon. When the **MacPaint** window opens, it should look something like this:

8. Play with the text.

a.) Click on the **text tool**. Click again on the upper middle of the screen.

b.) Type "Apple." The **menu bar** you see across the top works the same way as the menu bar on the desktop. Pull down **Font Size** to 72. Pull down **Style** to **Outline**.

c.) Click on the **grabber**. Click and drag anywhere on the **worksheet** to pull "Apple" to the center of the **window**.

d.) Click a **pattern** other than black from the **Pattern Palette**. The **Selected Fill Pattern** should change to the pattern you chose.

e.) Click on the **paint bucket**. Put the very tip of the spilling paint in the hollow space inside of the letter "!" in "Apple". Click **ONCE**. The hollow space should fill with your selected pattern. If the paint "spills" pull down **Edit** to **Undo**.

f.) Click on the **eraser**. Erase (click and drag over) the letter "e" in "Apple".
g.) Click on the selection rectangle. Click and drag from a point above and to the left of "Appl" to a point below and to its right. There should be an animated dotted line rectangle (like an old theater marquee) around the word "Appl".


i.) Click on the lasso. Carefully click and drag the tiny little piece of rope that dangles off of the lasso's knot, in a circle completely around the "A" in "Appl". Now the animated dotted line should "outline" the letter "A".

i.) Do not click yet, but position the lasso inside the letter "A". The lasso should turn into a mouse arrow. Click and drag the "A" from place to place.

j.) Press the option key, and drag the "A" some more. There should be two letter "A's" now. Click the fattest line from the Line and Border Widths box. Press both option and & (command) while you drag the "A" around some more. A whole trail of "A's" should appear.

   The width of the line checked in the Line and Border Widths box controls the spacing between the "A's".

k.) Pull down Edit to Cut. Pull down Edit to Paste. What happened? Drag the selected (lassoed) "A" around some more. Press backspace. The selected "A" is gone for good. Double-click the eraser. Everything is gone for good.

   Everything you did with the "A" except steps a and b can be done with any image in the MacPaint drawing window. Now let's look at some other tools:

9. Learn about the pencil and FatBits:

   a.) Click the pencil. Write your name by clicking and dragging the pencil in the window. You will get better with a little practice.

   b.) Place the tip of the pencil over a particular portion of your name which you would like to see in more detail. Press the command button and click. (command-click) Now you are in FatBits. FatBits allows you to see and modify your picture one pixel at a time!
c.) You can use your pencil in FatBits to click pixels in and out of existence. Try it! The little box in the upper left hand corner of the window shows you an actual-sized picture of what is going on.

If you start to drag the pencil when it is on white it will make black. If you start to drag the pencil when it is on black it will make white. This is true whether or not you are in FatBits. All of the other tools will work in FatBits too.

d.) Pressing the **Option** button will toggle the pencil into a grabber. Then you can use it to drag another portion of your FatBits drawing into sight.

e.) Double-click on the pencil to get out of FatBits.

10. Try the **paint brush** and make some **custom erasers**:

a.) Click on a different pattern. Click on the **paint brush**. Paint (drag) a line under your name with it.

b.) Double-click the **paint brush**. Click on a different brush shape in the box that appears. Try painting with your new brush shape.

c.) Click on the white pattern. Now your brush is a custom-shaped eraser. You can make an **eraser one pixel wide** if you click the one pixel brush shape.

d.) Or if you double-click the brush, and pick the biggest square brush shape, you will have a **transparent eraser** that will allow you to see what you are about to erase before you click.

11. Pick another pattern if you like. Click on the **spray can**. Spray paint a rectangle around your underlined name.

You can make the paint **transparent** if you press the **command** button while you spray. This works for the paint bucket and brush too.

12. Click on the hollow rectangular **enclosed shape tool**.

a.) Make a second rectangle around the spray painted rectangle. (Click and drag, upper left to lower right.)

b.) Try a **filled** enclosed shape tool. Make a filled shape.

c.) Click another border width, and try yet another enclosed shape tool.
The border width you select controls the widths of lines made by any line-making tool (including the enclosed shape tools) except the pencil. If you hold the option button down while you use any of these tools, the border will be in your selected pattern instead of black.

If you want a patterned shape with no border, click on the dotted line "............" border. It represents no border at all.

The bottom two "enclosed" shape tools are not restricted to enclosed shapes. The heart-shaped tool allows "freehand" lines of any selected width or pattern. The "crushed box" (polygon) tool allows you to draw a series of connected lines: click each time you want to change direction. Double-click when you are done.

13. In order to do things to an image, you select parts of it with either the lasso or the selection rectangle. You can do the following things to an image when it is selected with either of these tools:

a.) Click and drag the image anywhere in the window.

b.) Duplicate it: press option as you click and drag; click again each time you want to leave another copy of the image in your trail.

c.) Leave a continuous trail of images: press both option and (command) as you click and drag. The spacing between the images is controlled by the line width in the Line and Border Widths selection box.

d.) Paste your drawing elsewhere: you can pull down Edit to Copy or Cut. Then use the grabber to move the worksheet; or quit and move to Word or MacPaint. Then you can pull down Edit to Paste, and paste your drawing wherever you like.

i.) When you Paste within MacPaint, you can make the item you have Cut conform to a particular shape by making a new selection rectangle to "receive" the pasted drawing.

ii.) If you have Cut or Copied text from MacWrite or Word, and you want to paste it in MacPaint, you can prepare a selection rectangle to receive it. When you paste, the text will "flow" to fit the selection rectangle. You can drag the corners of the rectangle to change its shape, and the text will "reflow" to fit the new shape. You can select new fonts, sizes and styles while the selection rectangle is "active" and the text within will change accordingly! But beware, once your pasted text is "deselected" you cannot select it again, so be sure to do it right the first time!
e.) **Eliminate the selected image** by any of the following:

i.) Pull down **Edit to Cut**. This puts it in the "clipboard" and you can bring it back later by pulling down **Edit to Paste**. The catch is that you can only have one thing in the clipboard at a time. So if you like what's in the clipboard, and you don't want to eliminate it with a second **Cut**, do either of the next two as an alternate:

ii.) Pull down **Edit to Clear**.

iii.) Press backspace.

14. But there are **big differences** between the lasso and the selection rectangle:

a.) After you have clicked on the lasso, you can click and drag it in a circle around the target object. The lasso "tightens" to select **only** the target object.

Actually, you do not have to make a complete circle with the lasso: it is sufficient to get it about three-fourths of the way around the circle. (The tiny little piece of rope that dangles off of the lasso's knot is the "hot" point that generates the lasso "rope".)

b.) You can drag lassoed objects over the top of patterns or other objects, so they appear to be "behind" the lassoed object.

**To superimpose letters** such as Q, R, O, P, over a pattern or other objects, so they will show through the interior portion of the letter, you must intentionally create a "leak" in the letter, so the pattern beneath can "leak" through to the enclosed space within the letter. Then select the letters with the lasso as you normally would and drag them over the pattern.

c.) After you have clicked on the selection rectangle, you can click and drag from upper left to lower right to make a selection rectangle around a target object. You are stuck with the rectangular shape and it selects **everything inside** the rectangle, including the empty space.

So you cannot use the selection rectangle to superimpose one object over another. The "empty" space will obliterate any pattern or other objects which are "under" the rectangle.

d.) However, objects can be rotated, flipped, stretched, and have their edges traced, when they are selected with the selection rectangle. The lasso can't do any of these things. You already saw how to rotate and flip in step 2. Here's **how to stretch images, and trace edges**:

Press command and move the mouse pointer just inside the selection rectangle, then click and drag to stretch the selected object. If you pull at
a corner, you can stretch it in two directions at once. If you want to maintain a constant length to width ratio, press both command and shift while you stretch.

If you want to stretch an object to full page 8" X10" size, Cut and Paste it into Word or MacWrite. Then you can stretch it to the max by dragging on the "handles"; the tiny black squares in the corners.

Trace Edges is awesome! Try it and see why! Select an object with the "marquee," then pull down Edit to Trace Edges or use [command]-[E]. Try shift-[command]-[E] for shadows.

But why should I continue to run on this way; you get the idea! People seem to gravitate naturally to MacPaint; and only few minutes of instruction seem necessary in order to learn most of MacPaint's fundamentals independently. Go ahead and play with MacPaint on your own; that's the best way to learn about it. But when you're done playing, come back and read the rest of this chapter. There are a few other facts that may be worth knowing:

15. When you start to create something you think you might want to save, pull down File to Save. A dialog box will appear with the insertion point winking in the small rectangle under the words "save current document as:" Type the name of the paper (document) you are going to write, the way you want it listed in the computer's directory (Make the name short, but memorable). The letters will flow out behind the moving insertion point. Click on the "save" button. The dialog box will go away, and the name you have selected will take the place of "untitled" on the title bar.

Warning: Save what you write. If you don't, you will probably lose all your work. To save, pull down File to Save every ten minutes or every time you get up to get coffee or go to the bathroom. The disk drive will hum for a few seconds while the computer stores your work on the disk. It's cheap insurance!!

Note: if you want to change the title of a document, do it when you are back on the desktop. Click and drag through the title under the document icon. The mouse pointer will turn into an l-beam. Now type the new name. Click elsewhere on the desktop to make the change permanent.

16. Pull down File to Page Setup... A dialog box titled LaserWriter or ImageWriter, depending upon which printer you selected with the Chooser, should appear. If you don't want to change anything, click the "ok" button, and the dialog box should go away.

Note: If you are using the ImageWriter, you should click Tall Adjusted in the Page Setup...dialog box. (This degrades the print quality slightly, but greatly improves the picture quality.)

17. When you are ready to quit DO NOT turn off the computer. If you turn off the computer without going through proper shutdown procedure, you may lose hours of work, or even damage your disk.
a.) When you are ready to quit, pull down File to Quit. If you have not saved already, a dialog box will ask you if you want to save your work. Click "yes" or "no." After the disk drive hums briefly, the desktop will reappear. If you can already see the desktop, skip this step.

b.) Once you are back to the desktop, the best way to quit is to pull down Special to Shut Down. This ejects all disks and resets the computer. If you are done, you can turn off the computer; or if you want change startup disks and do something totally different with the computer, you can reboot with a different startup disk.

c.) You can also quit by dragging the disk into the trash. After Mac spits out the disk, turn him off.

d.) If you want to keep the present disk as the startup disk, and keep its directory window on the screen; perhaps while you copy a file from one disk to another, select (click on) the disk icon, and pull down File to Eject, or type \-E. Mac will spit out the disk that was selected.

18. When you want to go back to work on the same drawing, boot the system, and open the directory window. There should be a document icon there with the name you gave your paper in step 15. Reopen your drawing by double-clicking that icon.

19. When you are ready to print; Save; then do the following:

   a.) Make sure the printer is turned on:

      i.) If you are using a LaserWriter, the On/Off switch is on the left end, just around the backside corner from the Power Cord Socket:

      The green light on the front flashes as the LaserWriter warms up; then the yellow light starts flashing to show that the LaserWriter is processing a test print. The LaserWriter should deliver its own test print within two minutes. The yellow light will go out when the LaserWriter delivers the
test print. When the green light is on steady, the LaserWriter is ready to print.

ii.) If you are using an *ImageWriter*, turn it on by depressing the on/off button, which is on the right side of the ImageWriter's top. Three green lights adjacent to the on/off button should come on. If you are using an old ImageWriter, there will be only two green lights. (If you don't get the right number of green lights, or the ImageWriter needs paper, and you don't know what to do, read the "ImageWriter" chapter.)

b.) Pull down File to Print. When the dialog box appears click the "ok" button. It may take a minute or two, but if all goes well, Mac ought to start printing.

c.) In case of difficulty...

i.) ...if nothing happens, you may have skipped steps 3, 6, or 9: that is, you must have printer driver icon for the printer you intend to use present in your system folder; the AppleTalk "on-off" switch must be set the right way and the appropriate printer and port must have been selected in *Chooser*; and File must have been pulled down to *Page Setup*...

ii.) ...if something goes wrong during the ImageWriter printing process, first turn off the printer by pressing its on/off button; then press [command-period]. (Mac will tell you to stop the printing by pressing [command-period] only, but this turns out to be much too slow.)

20. To avoid excessive use of the mouse: Use the keyboard command letters instead, which appear to the right of many of the options in the pull down menus. There are dozens of other keyboard commands as well, which are listed in the "Hurry up" chapter of this book, and the Apple literature.

21. There are three ways to move your *MacPaint* graphics into other documents: you can use the clipboard, *Art Grabber +*, or the *Scrapbook*.

 a.) **Clipboard**: when the other document is on the same disk with your *MacPaint* creation:

 i.) Pull down *Edit* to Copy. Quit *MacPaint*.

 ii.) Open your other document; click where you want the graphic to be, then pull down *Edit* to Paste. Your graphic should appear.

 b.) **Art Grabber +**: If the graphic already exists on your disk as a *MacPaint* document, you can use *Art Grabber* to "grab" it while you are working within the other document.
i.) Pull down • to Art Grabber+. The word "Grabber+" will appear on the menu bar.

ii.) Pull down Grabber+ to Open. A directory of your MacPaint documents will appear. You may need to open a folder to get at them. Double click on the title of the MacPaint document you want. It will appear in the Art Grabber window.

iii.) Click and drag the "+" mouse pointer from the upper left corner to the lower right corner of the part of the MacPaint document you want to use. Pull down Edit to Copy. Click the close box of the Art Grabber window.

iv.) Click where you want the graphic to be. Pull down Edit to Paste.

c.) Scrapbook: when the other document is on the same disk with your MacPaint creation:

i.) Select the portion of the graphic which you want to transfer; and Cut(or Copy) it.

ii.) Pull down • to Scrapbook, and when the scrapbook window opens, Paste your item. Click the close box.

If there are several different portions you would like to paste, repeat steps i. and ii. Each time you paste into the scrapbook, another page is created. This is an advantage over the clipboard, because the clipboard will only accept one portion at a time. Once you have pasted something into the scrapbook, it is safe; you can do anything else you might want to do: use the clipboard, quit for the day, or take a vacation. What you paste in the scrapbook is safely stored on the disk, it will not disappear when the power goes off, like things which are stored in the clipboard.

iii.) When you are ready to paste the Scrapbook-stored graphic into the other document, pull down • to Scrapbook; and, when the scrapbook appears, page through it, by clicking on the scroll bar below its window, until you find the graphic you want.

iv.) Cut (or Copy) the item from the scrapbook. Click the close box.

v.) Click in the other document where you want your MacPaint graphic to be, and Paste.

22. To save a "changed" document without destroying the original: pull down File to Save As.... Type in the new name for your changed document. Click the "save" button.
23. **Disasters, problems and solutions:**

a.) If you make a mistake, you can undo your last action by pulling down **Edit to Undo**. But the catch is if you make even **ONE** attempt to fix your mistake before you try **Undo**, all you can "Undo" is your attempt. So when you screw up, **get your hands off of the mouse and the keyboard**. Stop, think, be cool. Then undo.

b.) If you pull down **File to Save** every ten minutes or so, and a disaster happens, you can pull down **File to Revert**, and your picture will "revert" to the way it was the last time you saved it.

c.) **Leaks can be a disaster:** If you are attempting to fill the interior of an object from the paint bucket, and the object leaks, you will cover your entire drawing with the pattern from the bucket. If you accidentally click the mouse more than once (and this is not unlikely, because the paint bucket often suffers from "delayed action"), you will not be able to use **undo** and your drawing will be destroyed. (Unless you have saved recently!)

d.) Do not use the paint bucket while in **FatBits**. It's too easy to spill it through a leak without knowing it. If this happens, your work will be ruined. (Unless you have saved recently!)

e.) **If there is a power failure** while you are working in **MacPaint**......., after the power comes back on, and you have rebooted the system and opened the directory window:

   **do not** trash any unusual icons that may have appeared;

   **do not** attempt to restart by clicking your **MacPaint file** icon.

   Instead, double-click the **MacPaint application** icon. With luck, your work will reappear under the file name "rescue." Save and continue working.

f.) **After you have pasted a drawing in Word or MacWrite** : be careful not to type anything while the drawing is still selected. It will disappear.

g.) If your mouse seems to have become jerky and insensitive, the **Grid** probably got turned on by accident. Pull down the **Goodies** menu and see. If **Grid** has a check next to it, pull down **Goodies to Grid**, and turn it off.

24. For **precise positioning** of letters and parts of your drawing:

a.) **Pull down Goodies to Grid**. This sets up invisible grid lines on **MacPaint**, and the text, etc. will align only on the grid lines.

b.) If you use the shift key when you drag, you can only drag horizontally or vertically; you can only draw lines in directions that are whole number multiples of
45°, and you can only make squares and circles (as opposed to rectangles and ovals). When used this way, the shift key is said to constrain the tools.

This is particularly valuable when you want to erase next to a long horizontal or vertical edge: Position the eraser exactly where you want to begin; then press the shift key, while you click and drag in the general direction you want to go. The eraser will move in a precisely vertical or horizontal direction, and your shaky human hand won't accidentally wipe out part of the edge.

25. If you are typing text in MacPaint:

a.) Make sure you have the font, style, and size the way you want them before you "deselect" (click on something else). You can't change them later.

b.) If you want to change to a different font or style or size, as you are typing text, press Enter, then change the font; otherwise all your text will change to the newly selected font.

c.) You can pull down Style to Align Left, Center, or Right to get the text to be centered, say for a title page; or aligned on the left margin, etc.

d.) You can increase the font size without leaving the keyboard by typing "<->" (command->). Guess how to decrease the font size!

But there is a problem with this: the best looking fonts are the ones that appear in outline form when you pull down the Font Size menu (These are the fonts that are actually installed in Mac's system file.). If you use the above keyboard command to change font sizes, there's no quick way to tell whether you are using the installed (good-looking) fonts.

e.) You can change fonts themselves by typing <shift>-<.>

f.) When you Paste text into MacPaint that was Cut from Word or MacWrite, you lose the formatting. That is, all the special fonts, sizes, and styles are wiped out during the transfer. You can get around this by directly converting your Word or MacWrite screen into a MacPaint document (titled "screen 0") by typing <shift>-3. Cut and paste what you want from "screen 0."

g.) If you want a "tighter" spacing for shadowed text, or a "3-D" effect, type <shift>-E, while your plain text is selected.

26. When you draw lines in MacPaint:

a.) All lines, no matter how you draw them, except pencil lines can be drawn in the selected pattern instead of black: press option when you draw the lines.
b.) You can pour paint "into" any line, including pencil lines, by precisely position­
ing the tip of the paint "drip" from the paint bucket on the line before you click. This may take some practice.

c.) **Shift** constrains the direction of the line and polygon (squashed box) tools to multiples of 45 degrees. **Shift** constrains the direction of the pencil to hori­
zontal and vertical.

But you really don't need to constrain the line or polygon tools to draw multiples of 45 degrees: you can "eyeball" it. The only truly "straight" lines in *MacPaint* are multiples of 45 degrees; all others have a "stair step" look to them. All you have to do is twiddle with the endpoint of the line until the line looks straight. When it looks straight, it is at a multiple of 45 degrees.

d.) **To draw dotted lines:**

**Method 1:** Lasso a dot, and drag it with the 🟢-option buttons pressed. To draw horizontal and vertical lines, drag the dot with the 🟢-option-shift buttons pressed. This method takes practice to get uniform dot spacing.

**Method 2:** Select a diagonal strip pattern. Double-click the brush. Click on the single dot brush pattern. Drag the brush wherever you want dotted lines. To draw horizontal and vertical lines, drag the brush with the shift button pressed. This method works best for horizontal and vertical lines, and will not work at all for diagonal lines.

27. **To draw concentric circles (one circle centered inside of another):**

a.) Click the pencil, then click a single dot. This dot will be the upper left corner of an imaginary box which exactly contains the outer circle.

b.) Click the circle tool.

c.) Position the crosshairs exactly on the dot. The crosshairs will be white in the center if they are exactly on the dot.

d.) Press shift and drag the outer circle from upper left (on the dot) to lower right.

e.) Click the line tool.

f.) Position the crosshairs exactly (white center) on the dot again.

g.) Press shift and drag a diagonal, 45 degree line from upper left (on the dot) to lower right. The line will pass through the center of the circle.
h.) Now decide where on the diagonal you want to have the upper left corner of a smaller imaginary box that will exactly contain the inner circle. Click the pencil. Then press the \[ \text{\textbullet} \] button and click the pencil at your chosen point to go to FatBits.

i.) While you are in FatBits, click a one pixel gap in the diagonal line at your chosen point. Count how many pixels the gap is from from the outer circle.

j.) Press option and use the grabber to drag the worksheet until the opposite side of the outer circle is visible in FatBits. Count the same number of pixels from this side to the circle, and click a one pixel gap there. Double-click the pencil to get out of FatBits.

k.) Click the circle tool.

l.) Position the crosshairs exactly on the upper left gap. The crosshairs will be black in the center if they are exactly on the gap.

m.) Press \text{shift} and drag the new inner circle from upper left (on the gap), until the crosshairs are on the lower right gap.

28. You can \textit{edit a pattern} by double-clicking on the pattern sample you would like to change, and playing with the FatBits in the pattern edit box which appears.

a.) If you don't like your creation, click the \textbf{Cancel} button.

b.) If you want to use your created pattern for this work session only, click "ok". But the pattern will revert to the original when you quit from \textit{MacPaint}.

c.) If you create a pattern you especially like, cut and paste a sample of it to the scrapbook. To get it back again, cut and paste the pattern from the scrapbook into the \textit{MacPaint} window, and click on it while the pattern edit box is open.

29. \textbf{To see the entire 8" X 10" worksheet}, \textit{Show Page} by double-clicking on the grabber. The dotted-line rectangle in the little picture of the worksheet which appears, represents the present position of the drawing window.

a.) You can move the drawing window's location on the worksheet by clicking and dragging anywhere \textit{inside} the dotted-line rectangle.

b.) You can slide the whole worksheet around, to center your work on the the page etc., \textbf{but beware}: if you "spill" your work off the edge of the page, it will be lost forever. (Unless you click the \textbf{Cancel} button while the worksheet is still displayed!)

c.) Click "ok" to escape from \textit{Show Page}.

\textbf{MacPaint} 18
30. To save space on your MacPaint disk, you can combine many little MacPaint pictures on one 8" X 10" worksheet. List the names of the little pictures under Get Info for the file icon of that worksheet. If you want a picture "catalog" of the whole page, do a "⌘-shift-3" while in Show Page, then modify and use the "screen 0" MacPaint document that is produced as your catalog.
This is a digitized photograph of my mother, taken when she was about 18 years old:

I digitized it by inserting a Xerox copy of the old photograph into an ImageWriter printer which had a Thunderscan Scanner Cartridge installed, rather than a normal ribbon cartridge. The Mac had Thunderscan software in it, which ordered the ImageWriter/Scanner combination to scan (in effect, "look at") the photo line by line. The differences in light intensity which the scanner saw were recorded in the Mac as a grey map: a collection of thousands of dots. The collection was enhanced by the Thunderscan software, then saved as a MacPaint document, which I pasted into this chapter.

If you want to use Thunderscan to digitize photos or line drawings for pasting into RSG, Word, or MacWrite documents, here's what to do:

1. Hook up the cables that connect the Scanner Cartridge, Adapter Box, ImageWriter,
and Macintosh. If you are using a Mac Plus, a Power Converter must also be con
nected:

This is how to connect a Mac Plus to a Thunderscan. The normal ImageWriter cable goes from the Adapter Box to the back of the ImageWriter.

Here's how to connect a Mac 512K to the Thunderscan. The normal ImageWriter cable goes from ImageWriter to Adapter Box.

2. Install the Scanner Cartridge in the ImageWriter as follows:

   a.) Unplug the ImageWriter, turn off the Mac; remove the top forward cover of the ImageWriter. Make sure the Bale is against the Platen:

---

Thunderscan 22
b.) Gently grasp the **Print Head** (do not grasp the cartridge) and move it to the middle of the carriage.

c.) Remove the ribbon cartridge from the ImageWriter by gently prying out the tabs on each side, and lifting the cartridge out.

d.) Take the Scanner Cartridge in both hands, and with the nose of the cartridge pointed toward the Platen and slightly down (so it doesn't bump the Bale), guide it onto the ribbon deck and click it into place. The two Tabs should snap into the notches on the sides of the Scanner Cartridge; be sure you hear two distinct clicks.

e.) Grasp the print head, and gently move it as far to the right and as far to the left as it will go, making sure that nothing interferes with its travel, and that the cable doesn't catch on anything. Leave the print head positioned to the far left.

f.) If this is an ImageWriter II, turn it on, being sure to keep your hands out of the insides. The scanner will travel to the left, then to the center, pivot down, then back up. (This insures that the scanner is properly seated.) Turn the ImageWriter II off.

3. Get the modified ImageWriter cover:

   a.) If you are using an old ImageWriter, this will be an entirely different cover, made specifically for the *Thunderscan*.

   b.) If you are using an ImageWriter II, you will need to remove the clear plastic portion of the cover yourself, by gently pressing the two clear plastic tabs on the underside of the cover inward and down with your thumbs.

   c.) Put the cover in place on the ImageWriter.

4. Find the fuzzy piece of Velcro about 12 inches down the cable that comes from the scanner. Press it against the other piece of Velcro on the front center of the ImageWriter, to keep the cable in place during scanning.

   **Note:** If there is no Velcro there, you will need to get a piece of rough (not fuzzy) Velcro with an adhesive back, and follow the directions for installation in the *Thunderscan* User's Guide. If you are using an old ImageWriter, you will probably need to obtain and install the white timing tape, which is also explained in the *Thunderscan* User's Guide.

5. Find the paper release lever on the outside of the ImageWriter case, and set it in the friction feed position:

   ![Friction Feed](image)
   ![Pin Feed](image)
6. Insert your original to be digitized so that the left edge of the paper is approximately three eighths of an inch from the left edge of the Platen, and the Bale is about one half inch above the top edge of the picture to be copied.

7. Find a work disk with *Thunderscan* on it. Turn on the Mac, and insert the disk. Double click the disk icon to open the directory window, then double click the *Thunderscan* application icon. (If you don't know what "open window" or "icon" etc. mean, then you need to study "MacPaint" or one of the other application chapters! If your only copy of *Thunderscan* is a master disk, and not a work disk, then you need to study the "How to Copy" chapter.) When *Thunderscan* opens, it will have a menu like this:

```
File Edit Scanner Tools
```

Pull down Scanner to Configuration.... You will get a dialog box like this.

```
ThunderScan™ Configuration Settings

☐ 15" Printer ☒ Edge Sensing
☐ Bi-Directional ☐ Modem Port
☒ Use Gray Map ☐ High Contrast
☐ Trim White ☐ Faster Scan
☒ ImageWriter II ☒ Paper Adjust

Slower Scan Mag: 25

[OK] [Cancel]
```

Set it as shown above for the ImageWriter II. For the old ImageWriter, unclick ImageWriter II, unclick Paper Adjust, and click Bi-Directional. Now click "ok".

8. Set the switch on the side of the Adapter Box to "SCAN".
9. Focus the Scanner as follows:

a.) Turn the ImageWriter off and remove the forward printer cover again. Gently move the Print Head until the Scanner's nose is pointing at the whitest area of the paper in the ImageWriter.

b.) Pull down Scanner to Focus.... Turn the thumb wheel on the top of the scanner until the number at the bottom of the focus dialog box reaches its maximum value. Click "done".

c.) Put the cover back on, turn the ImageWriter power on. Make sure you have three green lights if its an ImageWriter II, or two green lights if its an old ImageWriter. If you don't have enough green lights, press the select button on the ImageWriter.

10. Pull down Scanner to Scan.... You will get a scan dialog box like this:

   a.) Click and drag from upper left to lower right across the page map, to make a dotted-line rectangle around the area of the paper in your ImageWriter that you would like to scan.

   b.) Unclick the Bi-Directional box if you are using an ImageWriter II.

   c.) Set the Magnification by dragging the Magnification scroll box. The greater the magnification, the more machine memory you will use, the longer it will take,
and the higher will be the quality of your picture. If you use too much, the machine will let you know. I'd use 100% to start.

11. Click on the "New Scan" button. After some preliminary jerks, starts, and delays, the image pane will begin to fill with your picture, as the picture is scanned line by line. (If everything is plugged in, turned on, and nothing happens, try clicking the "Pause" button.)

While the ImageWriter scans your picture, let's look at some of the features of the main Thunderscan screen pictured above.

a.) The tool palette, to the left of the image screen will allow you to modify the picture when the scanning is finished: it is no coincidence that the tools look like MacPaint tools. To use them, you will click and drag across the area you wish to alter. The hand will allow you to slide the picture around beneath the Image Pane, so you can see all of the picture. The dotted line selection box will allow you to select particular portions of your picture for modification. The pencil and eraser work just like their real counterparts.

b.) The Light Intensity Gauge shows you what the scanner sees as it scans each line. This will help you adjust the Contrast and Brightness controls when you modify the picture for best results later.
c.) The "Pause" button lets you pause in the middle of a scan without having to start over. Pushing it again allows you to resume. Don't click the "Stop" button unless you really want to quit and start over.

12. When the scan is complete, pull down File to Save as Scan Image.... Name picture something memorable, and click the "Save" button.

13. Click on the selection box. Use it to select a small portion (say 1 by 2 inches) of the picture to experiment with. Change the settings of the contrast and brightness controls. Pull down Scanner to Halftone. Watch what happens. Try to adjust the contrast and brightness so that the light intensity is scattered from top to bottom of the light intensity gauge without "topping out" or "bottoming out."

14. Repeat this process until you think you've found the best possible contrast and brightness settings; then pull down Edit to Select All. Pull down Scanner to Halftone again. This time you will modify the whole picture.

15. You can twiddle with highly detailed parts of the picture by pulling down Edit to Fat Bits; and then using the pencil to click out or click in the individual dot bits that make up the picture. A little picture in the upper left corner of the image pane shows the full size effect of your work in fat bits. Pull down Edit to Fat Bits again when you are done.

16. If you need to erase a large area, select it; then pull down Edit to Clear.

17. When your digitized picture is as good as you can make it, Save as Scan again; then pull down File to Save as Paint Doc.... This saves your Thunderscan image as a MacPaint document, allowing you to do anything with it that you can do with any other MacPaint document.
This chapter assumes that you want to be able to draft advertisements, floor plans, or other precisely scaled graphics of the type that once were prepared at a drafting table or layout board.

1. In order to get started, you'll need a Macintosh computer, and a work disk with MacDraw on it. (If your only copy of MacDraw is a master disk, you need to study the "How to Copy" chapter first, and make a second work disk copy. It is dangerous to use your only copy of an application: what will you do if you damage it?)

   a.) Connect the power cord and mouse to the back of the Mac. If you have an ImageWriter printer, or an external disk drive, or you have access to an AppleTalk system, connect them too. Study the little icons (pictures) above the connectors in the back of the Mac: they will help you to decide which peripheral (accessory) connects where. (If you use it, the AppleTalk connector must be plugged into the port below the printer icon.) Plug your Mac into a surge protector or a grounded (three prong) wall outlet.

   b.) Plug the keyboard into the jack at the base of the front of the Mac. Make sure the keyboard's plugs are right side up when you insert them, or you will bend the keyboard plug contacts.

   c.) Turn it on. The off-on switch is just above the power cord connection in the back. The Mac will "beep" when you turn it on.

   d.) Adjust the brightness. You can feel the knurled brightness knob under the ledge just below the apple logo, on the lower left front side of the computer. Don't turn the brightness any higher than necessary to see comfortably. The lower you keep the brightness, the longer the "picture tube" will last.

2. Hold the MacDraw work disk the way it is in this little picture: but with your right thumb over the label. Slide it all the way into the disc slot below the screen, until it snaps in and the disc drive starts to click and hum.

   The computer is gathering system information from the disk which is necessary for its operation; this process is sometimes called "booting the system." Any disk that "boots the system" is called a startup disk. A startup disk must have a system file on it. If Mac spits the disk out when you try to insert it, it's because the disk doesn't have a system file, or the disk is defective.)

After about 18 seconds, the disk drive will stop and the screen should look like the picture at the top of the next page:
The menu bar containing the words File Edit View Special is across the top of the screen. The desktop, which is the rest of the screen below the menu bar, should be blank except for the disk icon and trash icon on the right side. (If the desktop looks instead like the screen diagram below, no harm has been done. Someone left it that way when they last quit.)

3. There should be a pointer somewhere on the screen. The pointer moves around on the computer desktop when you roll the mouse around on a real table top. Move the mouse to position the tip of the pointer in the center of the disk icon and "double-click" (tickaticka) the mouse button without moving the mouse. This opens the disk's directory window; and now your screen should look something like this:

The icons in the directory window above represent the computer files which are recorded on the disk:

MacDraw 30
a.) The application icons represent files which tell the computer how to do something special; in this case, how to be a MacDraw graphics program.

b.) Icons with a "dog-earred" (bent-over) corner represent documents (drawings) which you create with applications like MacDraw.

c.) The system folder contains the System which tells Mac how to be a computer. The system also holds the fonts (type faces); and the desk accessories which are discussed in the appendix. Double-click the System Folder, and open it up:

d.) The Finder creates the desktop and the icons which allow you to find your way around in the Mac.

e.) The Clipboard File is a "clipboard" which allows you to carry words or pictures from one document to another. The clipboard will only hold one piece of information at a time.

f.) The Scrapbook File is a place you can store words and pictures to use over and over in different documents. The scrapbook will hold many different drawings or other pieces of information at once.

g.) The LaserWriter and ImageWriter are printer "drivers." If you want the computer to print documents on paper, you must have a driver for the printer you want to use. If you will be the first to use a LaserWriter printer after it has been turned on in the morning, you must have a Laser Prep. If the printer driver you want is missing, see the "How to Copy" chapter.

4. Close the system folder window by putting the tip of the pointer in the close box, and clicking once, without moving the mouse. (This is called "clicking on" the close box.)
Note: The box in the lower right corner of each window is called a "Size Box." If you put the tip of the pointer in it, and then hold the mouse button down while you "drag" the size box, you can change the shape of the window. Also, you can move the entire window by using this same strategy to "click and drag" the title bar around. This manipulation of windows can be quite useful when you are trying to arrange things so that you can see the contents of more than one window at once. Some windows have a "zoom" box in the their upper right corner. If you click on it, it will "toggle" the window between full size, and some other size you may have selected with the "Size Box."

5. Click and hold the mouse button, while you attempt to drag down the word View in the menu bar. A list should appear beneath it. The word View will not drag, but as you pull the pointer down, each line in the list is highlighted (blackened) in sequence. When the line by Size is highlighted, release the mouse button. (This process is called "pulling down" View to by Size.) The icons in the directory window should change into a list of the files and applications arranged in order of size, largest first. (The size is measured in "k." You may need to adjust the size box to see it.) If you wish, you can instead rearrange the list alphabetically by pulling down View to by Name, etc. Try it, then change the window back to by Icon.

6. The Apple menu, 🍏, lists desk accessories on your disk, such as the Scrapbook and Chooser. Use Chooser before you begin, to prepare Mac for the kind of printing he will do when you are ready to print your creation: pull down 🍏 to Chooser. When the Chooser window appears....

   a.) If you will be using a LaserWriter or an ImageWriter connected to the AppleTalk network, click on the "active" button, the printer icon, and the printer's name, if they do not "highlight" when you click on them, then something is wrong.
b.) If you will be printing on an ImageWriter connected to your Mac only, click the "Inactive" button for AppleTalk; then click on the ImageWriter icon, and click on the icon of the printer port to which the printer is connected. You can tell which port by looking to see where the ImageWriter plugs into Mac's back.

c.) Click the **Chooser's** close box.

**Note:** If your **Chooser** doesn't look like the one in the diagram, pull down 🍎 to **About the Finder**. A little card should appear that tells you the finder is number 5.3. (If it's not, you need to replace the system, finder, and printer driver icons. "How to Copy" tells how to do this.) Put the little card away by clicking on it.
7. Double-click the MacDraw application icon. When the MacDraw window opens, it should look something like this:

![MacDraw window diagram]

The menu, the scroll bars, the size box, and the close box, are all standard Macintosh tools. But one thing that sets MacDraw apart from other applications is the tool palette on the left.

The tools in the palette are used to create discrete "objects." Each of these objects can be manipulated independently. You can go back and revise any object at any time without affecting other objects you have created. (This is different because, in MacPaint, once a selected object is released, it is pasted there for good unless you erase it; and if you erase it, there will be a hole in your drawing where the object was.)

Preparing a graphic display with MacDraw is a matter of creating a collection of "objects," putting the objects together, then experimenting with the objects (changing and repositioning them) until you have achieved the effect you want. Let's prepare a simple advertisement so you can see how all this works.

8. Decide how big you want the advertisement to be. (Mine will be 2.5" wide by 2".) You will need rulers to be sure your dimensions are right: pull down Layout to Show Rulers. A set of rulers should appear along the left and top edges of the MacDraw window. Here's how make a box the right size:

a.) Click the Rectangles tool. (When a tool has been clicked, the "X" Pointer turns into a "+" Pointer.)

b.) Click and drag from upper left to lower right. (You can tell the dimensions exactly because the little moving dotted lines on the rulers show exactly where the pointer is.) Your ad box should look like the picture on the next page:
c.) You can drag any of the eight tiny black boxes (called handles), as needed, to readjust the size and(or) shape of your rectangle. You can shift the entire rectangle without changing its size or shape by clicking and dragging anywhere inside of it.

d.) When your ad box is just right, lock it so you won't accidentally move it later: Pull down Arrange to Lock. (You can unlock it later, if you want to move it again.)

9. Now make a border inside of your ad:

a.) Click the round corner rectangle tool.

b.) Pull down Lines to the width of line you want for your border; and pick a pattern for it by pulling down Pen to the pattern you want. (The width and pattern you have selected will show up in the small Line box in the lower left hand corner of the drawing window.)

c.) Draw your border, paying attention to the rulers to be sure it is the same distance from all four sides of the ad box. If it is a little bit off center, remember you can jiggle it into position by clicking and dragging it on its inside. When it's just right, lock it.
10. Pull down **File to Save.** A **dialog box** will appear with the **insertion point** winking in the small rectangle under the words “**save current document as:**” Type the name of the drawing, the way you want it listed in the computer’s directory (Make the name short, but memorable). The letters will flow out behind the moving insertion point. Click on the “save” button. The dialog box will go away, and the name you have selected will take the place of “untitled” on the **title bar.** You will not have to fill in the dialog box again, unless you change your drawing’s name.

**Warning:** Save your work. If you don’t, you will probably lose it. To save, pull down **File to Save** every ten minutes or every time you get up to get coffee or go to the bathroom. The disk drive will hum for a few seconds while the computer stores your work on the disk. It’s cheap insurance!!!

*Note:* if you want to change the title of a document, do it when you are back on the desktop. Click and drag through the title under the document icon. The mouse pointer will turn into an I-beam. Now type the new name. Click elsewhere on the desktop to make the change permanent.

11. Pull down **File to Page Setup...** A dialog box titled **LaserWriter** or **ImageWriter,** depending upon which printer you selected with the **Chooser,** should appear. If you don’t want to change anything, click the “ok” button, and the dialog box should go away.

*Note:* If there is any chance you will be using a LaserWriter, you should always use LaserWriter fonts in **MacDraw.** If you are working within **MacDraw** select LaserWriter fonts in the first place. Some of the LaserWriter fonts are Helvetica, Times, Symbol, N.Helvetica, Zapf Dingbats, and Zapf Chancery. ImageWriter fonts will look “stretched out” when you print on the LaserWriter; and it will make the LaserWriter take a very long time to print. Even if you are going to print a first draft on an ImageWriter, you should still use the LaserWriter fonts!!!!

12. Now make a drawing to go in your ad. (Because you will be doing freehand work, you will need to pull down **Layout to Turn Grid Off,** while you are working on your drawing. The grid aligns objects in **MacDraw** along imaginary grid lines, which keeps things neat, but makes it impossible to do fine freehand adjustments in some cases.)

a.) **Click the circle tool.** Change the **Pen** pattern back to black, and the **Lines** back to normal.

b.) **Press shift to constrain the circle tool to perfect circles,** while you use the mouse to draw a quarter inch circle well outside of your ad box.

c.) While the circle is still selected (You can tell it’s selected because it has handles!), press **⌘-D (Command-D)** to duplicate it four times. Now you have a diagonal row of five overlapping circles like this:

![Diagram of overlapping circles](image)

**d.) Click and drag the circles until they make an arc instead of a row.** (They should look like a small bunch of lollypops.)
e.) Select each lollypop in turn, by clicking on it, and choose a different pattern from Fill for each:

f.) Select all five of the lollypops by using the \ pointer to box them in with a dotted line rectangle: drag from above and to their left to below and to their right. Pull down Arrange to Group. Now the bunch of lollypops is a single object instead of five objects. Move (click and drag) the lollipops into your ad box.

g.) Click the diagonal lines tool. Pull down Lines to the proper width for a lollypop stick. Pull down Pen to put a pattern on the stick. Draw lollypop sticks attached to each lollypop, similar to the picture below. Hold the command key down while you draw so you won’t have to keep clicking the diagonal lines tool.

h.) Select, group, and lock your picture. This time you will need to select your lollypops and each stick, one at a time, holding the shift key down and clicking on each part.

13. MacDraw does text in two entirely different ways. Either way is better than MacPaint ...

a.) ...because you can change font, style, or font size any time the text is selected. (However, any change you attempt affects the entire text block the same way: you cannot change only one part of a text block.)

b.) ...because any background you have behind the text will show through, between the letters, if you have pulled down Fill to "none."

The two ways MacDraw does text are called "caption" and "paragraph":

c.) You get "caption" text by clicking the text tool (the "T" in the tool palette). Then click where you want to start typing, and type. The words will flow out after the insertion point, just as you probably expect them to. The problem is, caption doesn't word wrap, so the words flow out forever, in a straight line ignoring all objects
in the drawing window, unless you press return. You can "Cut and Paste" selected portions of "caption" text in the normal Macintosh way.

d.) **You get "paragraph" text** by clicking in any box that happens to be in the drawing window; and starting to type. The words will flow out after the insertion point again. However, this time they will word wrap when they get to the side of the box. You do not have to press return; you can keep typing until the box fills up. Correct your work by backspacing as you type; you won't be able to correct it later.

You can Cut text from MacWrite or Word and Paste it into MacDraw as paragraph text:

   i.) Cut or Copy the text from MacWrite or Word into the clipboard. Quit.

   ii.) Open MacDraw. (You must be on the same startup disk or the clipboard will be lost. If you are using Switcher, hold option down while you change applications.)

   iii.) Make a box. Click in it.

   iv.) Type one letter from the keyboard; any letter will do. Backspace over the letter. An insertion point will be winking in the upper left corner of the box.

   v.) Pull down Edit to Paste. The text will "flow" in, conforming to the box's sides.

"Paragraph" text respects the sides of the box until you select the box. After you select the box, that block of "paragraph" text becomes a separate object, which can be independently moved and resized just like every other object on the drawing board. When you change the shape of a block of paragraph text, by pulling on the handles, the words will "flow" to conform to that new shape. ("Caption" text won't "flow" into new shapes like this; however, "paragraph" text won't cut and paste! So each type of text has its advantages.)

14. Let's practice working the text features of MacDraw:

a.) Click the text tool (the capital "T"), then click the space to the right of your ad. Type the words, "Five Flavors." Pull down Font to various types and sizes, and pull down **Style** to various styles, until you get a good combination. Pull down Fill to None.

b.) Click the selection pointer tool, then click and drag "Five Flavors" onto your ad. Play with the text position until it looks right. You may have to move your

---

1."Cut and paste" means you can click and drag over a portion of text which you would like to move, and pull down **Edit to Cut**. Then click where you would like the text to be, and pull down **Edit to Paste**.

2.And you can import drawings from MacPaint the same way. Just don't try to stretch them after they are in MacDraw. Things will fall apart in a hurry.
picture around. If so, select your picture and pull down **Arrange to Unlock.** Tweak the picture and the text some more. When everything is perfect, lock it.

c.) Now make another box to the right of your ad. (If your box is transparent, pull down Fill to the plain white "pattern." ) Click in the box, and type these words,"A five flavor bouquet of lollipops will be given to every adult who brings a child into Thrifty foods on the day of the parade."

d.) Click in the center of your new "paragraph" text block. Try various fonts, sizes, and styles until you think the print is as small as you can make it. (Try plain Helvetica 9.)

e.) Drag your "paragraph" block into your ad. Try push and pulling on the handles until it fits.

15. You may have figured out already that, with the exception of the text blocks, our objects are opaque. To illustrate this, lets try a demonstration:

   a.) Select the edge of your ad box. Unlock it. Fill it with black. Your ad should now have a suave looking two-tone border:

   b.) Select the round corner rectangle border which you originally placed inside of your ad box. Unlock it. Fill it with "none." Ooops! Now you can see that each object is opaque (unless it's filled with "none.").

   c.) Refill your round corner rectangle border with (opaque) white.

16. Select your whole ad with the dotted line rectangle. Pull down **Arrange to Flip Vertical.** Ooops! Try a **Rotate Left** etc. Fun!

17. Click on "Five Flavors." Pull down **Arrange to Send to Back.** When you do this, "Five Flavors" isn't gone. It has just moved to the bottom of the pile. If you don't believe it, select the rest of the pile and drag it aside as illustrated on the next page.
18. To erase portions of your drawing:

a.) Make a box. While it is selected, pull down Fill to the white pattern; pull down Lines to the invisible line. "- - - -". The box should "disappear", except for the selection handles.

b.) Drag the "invisible" box over part of your ad. Part of the ad should disappear as though it was erased. And unlike MacPaint you can "unerase" it anytime you want to!

19. Pull down Layout to Reduce to Fit. This shows the size of your ad compared to a standard 8.5 by 11 inch piece of paper. Of course the ad isn't actual size on the drawing window anymore. You can actually drag objects around though, while in Reduce to Fit. This really speeds things up if you are working on a large drawing. Pull down Layout to Normal Size, if you want to get back to the drawing window.
20. MacDraw has windows. You can drag the size box (the lower right corner of the drawing window) to the left, and make the window smaller. Then pull down File to New; make another window; and adjust its size with the size box. Etc. Make as many windows as you want. Pull down File to Open, now you can open up old MacDraw documents if they exist. (You may have to open a folder to get at them.) It is possible to copy and paste parts of different MacDraw documents between windows. Neat! If you have drawings with parts you need for new drawings, that you don't want to destroy:

![MacDraw interface](image)

21. When you are ready to quit **DO NOT** turn off the computer. If you turn off the computer without going through proper shutdown procedure, you may lose hours of work, or even damage your disk.

a.) When you are ready to quit, pull down File to Quit. If you have not saved already, a dialog box will ask you if you want to save your work. Click "yes" or "no." After the disk drive hums briefly, the desktop will reappear. If you can already see the desktop, skip this step.

b.) Once you are back to the desktop, the best way to quit is to pull down Special to Shut Down. This ejects all disks and resets the computer. If you are done, you can turn off the computer; or if you want change startup disks and do something totally different with the computer, you can reboot with a different startup disk.

c.) You can also quit by dragging the disk into the trash. After Mac spits out the disk, turn him off.
d.) If you want to keep a disk as the startup disk, and keep its directory window on the screen; perhaps while you copy a file from one disk to another, select (click on) the disk, and pull down File to Eject, or type \texttt{\textasciitilde -E}. Mac will spit out the disk that was selected.

22. When you want to go back to work on the same paper, boot the system, and open the directory window. There should be a document icon there with the name you gave your paper in step 10. Reopen your paper by double-clicking that icon. When your paper opens, use the scroll bar to get to where you want to start working.

23. When you are ready to print; \texttt{Save}; then do the following:

a.) \textbf{Make sure the printer is turned on:}

   i.) \textbf{If you are using a LaserWriter}, the On/Off switch is on the left end, just around the backside corner from the Power Cord Socket:

   ![Front View of LaserWriter]

   The green light on the front flashes as the LaserWriter warms up; then the yellow light starts flashing to show that the LaserWriter is processing a test print. The LaserWriter should deliver its own test print within two minutes. The yellow light will go out when the LaserWriter delivers the test print. When the green light is on steady, the LaserWriter is ready to print.

   ii.) \textbf{If you are using an ImageWriter}, turn it on by depressing the on/off button, which is on the right side of the ImageWriter's top. Three green lights adjacent to the on/off button should come on. If you are using an old ImageWriter, there will be only two green lights. (If you don't get the right number of green lights, or the ImageWriter needs paper, and you don't know what to do, read the "ImageWriter" chapter.)
b.) Pull down File to Print. When the dialog box appears click the "ok" button. It may take a minute or two, but if all goes well, Mac ought to start printing.

c.) In case of difficulty...

i.) ...if nothing happens, you may have skipped steps 3, 6, or 11: that is, you must have printer driver icon for the printer you intend to use present in your system folder; the AppleTalk "on-off" switch must be set the right way and the appropriate printer and port must have been selected in Chooser; and File must have been pulled down to Page Setup...

ii.) ...if something goes wrong during the ImageWriter printing process, first, turn off the printer by pressing its on/off button; then press \[ \text{command-period} \]. (Mac will tell you to stop the printing by pressing \[ \text{command-period} \] only, but this turns out to be much too slow.)

24. To avoid excessive use of the mouse: Use the keyboard command letters instead, which appear to the right of many of the options in the pull down menus. There are dozens of other keyboard commands as well, which are listed in the "Hurry up" chapter of this book, and the Apple literature.

25. There are two ways to move your MacDraw drawings into other documents: you can use the clipboard or the Scrapbook.

a.) Clipboard: when MacDraw is on the same disk with graphics or word processing applications such as Excel, MacWrite, or MacPaint:

i.) Create the graphic or text in MacDraw select it, then pull down Edit to Copy. Quit that application.

ii.) Open your other document; click where you want the graphic to be, then pull down Edit to Paste. Your graphic should appear.

b.) Scrapbook: when the other document is on the same disk with your MacDraw creation:

i.) Select the portion of the MacDraw graphic which you want to transfer; and Cut(or Copy) it.

ii.) Pull down \[ \text{apples} \] to Scrapbook, and when the scrapbook window opens, Paste your item. Click the close box.

If there are several different portions you would like to paste, repeat steps i. and ii. Each time you paste into the scrapbook, another page is created. This is an advantage over the clipboard, because the clipboard will only accept one portion at a time. Once you have pasted something into the scrapbook, it is safe; you can do anything else you might want to do:
use the clipboard, quit for the day, or take a vacation. What you paste in the scrapbook is safely stored on the disk, it will not disappear when the power goes off, like things which are stored in the clipboard.

iii.) When you are ready to paste the **Scrapbook**-stored graphic into the other document, pull down ![Scrapbook](image) to **Scrapbook**; and, when the scrapbook appears, page through it, by clicking on the scroll bar below its window, until you find the graphic you want.

iv.) **Cut** (or **Copy**) the item from the scrapbook. Click the close box.

v.) Click in the other document where you want your **MacDraw** graphic to be, and **Paste**.

26. **To save a "changed" drawing without destroying the original**: pull down **File** to **Save As**.... Type in the new name for your changed document. Click the "save" button.
Essentially, *SuperPaint* is a greatly improved version of *MacPaint*, with the advantages of *MacDraw* thrown in. (The catch is it requires 430K of memory to work properly.) In working with *SuperPaint* one uses two different layers: one layer works like *MacPaint*; the other layer works like *MacDraw*. The *paint/draw toggle* feature to be discussed later, will allow you to switch between the two styles of graphics work.

Once you have created a part of your drawing in the *paint layer*, it loses its identity as a particular part and becomes nothing more than a *collection of bits* (or dots or pixels); which can be modified one little bit at a time. But different parts of the *draw layer* exist as separate entities in Mac's memory, like the separate components of an artist's collage. The *draw layer* allows you to "slide" the different parts around on the screen until you get just the right effect. The *draw layer* is therefore said to be "object oriented", while the *paint layer* is said to be "bit-mapped."

If you are already familiar with *MacPaint* and *MacDraw*, you will be able to use *SuperPaint* easily; but there are a few new things you will eventually need to know. Like the other application chapters, this chapter assumes total ignorance of computers and graphics programs, but to make the best use of *SuperPaint* even the experienced *MacPaint* or *MacDraw* user will benefit from a quick survey of this chapter. For your convenience, there is a topic index between steps 14 and 15.

1. In order to get started, you'll need a Macintosh computer, and a work disk with *SuperPaint* on it. (If your only copy of *SuperPaint* is a master disk, you need to study the "How to Copy" chapter first, and make a second work disk copy. It is dangerous to use your only copy of an application: what will you do if you damage it?)

   a.) Connect the power cord and mouse to the back of the Mac. If you have an ImageWriter printer, or an external disk drive, or you have access to an AppleTalk system, connect them too. Study the little icons (pictures) above the connectors in the back of the Mac: they will help you to decide which peripheral (accessory) connects where. (If you use it, the AppleTalk connector must be plugged into the port below the printer icon.) Plug your Mac into a surge protector or a grounded (three prong) wall outlet.

   b.) Plug the keyboard into the jack at the base of the front of the Mac. Make sure the keyboard's plugs are right side up when you insert them, or you will bend the keyboard plug contacts.

   c.) Turn it on. The off-on switch is just above the power cord connection in the back. The Mac will "beep" when you turn it on.

   d.) Adjust the brightness. You can feel the knurled brightness knob under the ledge just below the apple logo, on the lower left front side of the computer.
Don't turn the brightness any higher than necessary to see comfortably. The lower you keep the brightness, the longer the "picture tube" will last.

2. Hold the SuperPaint work disk the way it is in this little picture: but with your right thumb over the label. Slide it all the way into the disc slot below the screen, until it snaps in and the disc drive starts to click and hum.

The computer is gathering system information from the disk which is necessary for its operation; this process is sometimes called "booting the system." Any disk that "boots the system" is called a startup disk. A startup disk must have a system file on it. If Mac spits the disk out when you try to insert it, it's because the disk doesn't have a system file, or the disk is defective.)

After about 18 seconds, the disk drive will stop and the screen should look like this:

The menu bar containing the words File Edit View Special is across the top of the screen. The desktop, which is the rest of the screen below the menu bar, should be blank except for the disk icon and trash icon on the right side. (If the desktop looks instead like the screen diagram on the next page, no harm has been done. Someone left it that way when they last quit.)

3. There should be a pointer: somewhere on the screen. The pointer moves around on the computer desktop when you roll the mouse around on a real table top. Move the mouse to position the tip of the pointer in the center of the disk icon and "double-click" (tickaticka) the mouse button without moving the mouse. This opens the disk's directory window; and now your screen should look something like this:
The icons in the directory window above represent the computer files which are recorded on the disk:

a.) The application icons represent files which tell the computer how to do something; in this case, how to do SuperPaint graphics.

b.) Icons with a "dog-eared" (bent-over) corner represent documents which you create with applications like SuperPaint.

c.) The system folder contains the System which tells Mac how to be a computer. The system also holds the fonts (type faces); and the desk accessories which are discussed in the appendix. Double-click the System Folder, and open it up:
d.) The **Finder** creates the desktop and the icons which allow you to find your way around in the Mac.

e.) The **Clipboard File** is an electronic "clipboard" which allows you to "carry" words or pictures from one document to another. The clipboard will only hold one picture at a time.

f.) The **Scrapbook File** is a place you can store words and pictures to use over and over in different documents. The scrapbook will hold many different pictures at once.

g.) The **LaserWriter** and **ImageWriter** are printer "drivers." If you want the computer to print documents on paper, you must have a driver for the printer you want to use. If you will be the first to use a LaserWriter printer after it has been turned on in the morning, you will also need a **Laser Prep**. If the printer driver you want is missing, see the "How to Copy" chapter.

4. Close the **system folder** window by putting the tip of the pointer in the close box, and clicking once, without moving the mouse. (This is called "clicking on" the close box.)

Note: The box in the lower right corner of each window is called a "Size Box." If you put the tip of the pointer in it, and then hold the mouse button down while you "drag" the size box, you can change the shape of the window. Also, you can move the entire window by using this same strategy to "click and drag" the title bar around. This manipulation of windows can be quite useful when you are trying to arrange things so that you can see the contents of more than one window at once. Some windows have a "zoom" box in the their upper right corner. If you click in it, it will "toggle" the window between full size, and some other size you may have selected with the "Size Box."

5. Click and hold the mouse button, while you attempt to drag down the word View in the menu bar. A list should appear beneath it. The word View will not drag, but as you pull the pointer down, each line in the list is highlighted (blackened) in sequence. When the line **by Size** is highlighted, release the mouse button. (This process is called "pulling down" View to **by Size**.) The icons in the directory window should change into a list of the files and applications arranged in order of size, largest first. (The size is measured in "k." You may have to adjust the size box to see it.) If you wish, you can instead rearrange the list alphabetically by pulling down View to **by Name**, etc. Try it, then change the window back to **by Icon**.

SuperPaint 48
6. The Apple menu, ❌, lists desk accessories on your disk, such as the Scrapbook and Chooser. Use Chooser before you begin, to prepare Mac for the kind of printing he will do when you are ready to print your creation: pull down ❌ to Chooser. When the Chooser window appears....

a.) If you will be using a LaserWriter or an ImageWriter connected to the AppleTalk network, click on the "active" button, the printer icon, and the printer's name, if they do not "highlight" when you click on them, then something is wrong.

![Chooser Window](image)

If the printer icon isn't there, you need to go back to step 3g. If the printer's name isn't there, or if it refuses to highlight (white print on black) when you click on it, then the printer is not turned on; or the printer and/or your Mac are not connected to the AppleTalk network.

b.) If you will be printing on an ImageWriter connected to your Mac only, click the "Inactive" button for AppleTalk; then click on the ImageWriter icon, and click on the icon of the printer port to which the printer is connected. You can tell which port by looking to see where the ImageWriter plugs into Mac's back.

![Chooser Window](image)

c.) Click the Chooser's close box.
7. Double click the SuperPaint application icon. When SuperPaint opens, it should look something like the picture below. The paintbrush icon should be fully visible in the paint/draw toggle. If it isn't, click on the brush, to bring it to the top.

8. Play with the text.
   a.) Click on the text tool. Click again on the upper middle of the screen.

   b.) Type "Apple." The menu bar you see across the top works the same way as the menu bar on the desk top. Pull down Font Size to 72. Pull down Style to Outline.

   c.) Press the spacebar down and hold it there to get at the grabber. Click and drag with the grabber, anywhere on the worksheet to pull "Apple" as near to the center of the window as you can.

   d.) Click on the Selected Fill Pattern rectangle to be sure it is active. (A little black triangle should be pointing at it. Click a pattern other than black from the
Pattern Palette. The Selected Fill Pattern should change to the pattern you chose.

e.) Click on the paint bucket. Put the very tip of the spilling paint in the hollow space inside of the letter "I" in "Apple". Click ONCE. The hollow space should fill with your selected pattern. If the paint "spills," pull down Edit to Undo.

f.) Click on the eraser. Erase the letter "e" in "Apple" by clicking and dragging over it.

g.) Click on the selection rectangle. Click and drag from a point above and to the left of "Apple" to a point below and to its right. There should be an animated dotted line rectangle (like an old theater marquee) around the word "Apple".


i.) Click on the lasso. Carefully click and drag the tiny little piece of rope that dangles off of the lasso's knot, in a circle completely around the "A" in "Apple". Now the animated dotted line should "outline" the letter "A".

j.) Do not click yet, but position the lasso inside the letter "A". The lasso should turn into a mouse arrow. Click and drag the "A" from place to place.

k.) Press the option key, and drag the "A" some more. There should be two letter "A's" now. Click the fattest line from the Line and Border Widths box. Press both option and (command) while you drag the "A" around some more. A whole trail of "A's" should appear.

The width of the line checked in the Line and Border Widths box controls the spacing between the "A's''

l.) Pull down Edit to Cut. Pull down Edit to Paste. What happened? Drag the selected (lassoed) "A" around some more. Press backspace. The selected "A" is gone for good. Double-click the eraser. Everything is gone for good.

Everything you did with the "A" except steps a and b can be done with any image in the SuperPaint drawing window. Indeed, text is one of the last things you should be messing with in the "paint" layer. If you want to want to do serious work with text in SuperPaint you need to do it in the "draw" layer. This is discussed in step 25. Now let's look at some other tools:
9. Learn about the pencil and FatBits:

a.) Click the pencil,  
. Write your name by clicking and dragging the pencil in the window. You will get better with a little practice.

b.) Place the tip of the pencil over a particular portion of your name which you would like to see in more detail. Press the command button and click. (  )-click) Now you are in FatBits. FatBits allows you to see and modify your picture one pixel at a time!

Note: you can also get into FatBits by clicking on the FatBits tool . Then click on the portion of the screen that you would like to see magnified. You can then, in turn, click on the portion of the magnified screen that you would like to see more magnified, etc.

c.) You can use your pencil in FatBits to click pixels in and out of existence. Try it! The rectangle on the left shows you an actual-sized picture of what is going on.

Note: if you start to drag the pencil when it is on white it will make black. If you start to drag the pencil when it is on black it will make white. This is true whether or not you are in FatBits. All of the other tools will work in FatBits too.

d.) Pressing the spacebar will toggle the pencil into a grabber. Then you can use it to drag another portion of your FatBits drawing into sight.

e.) Double-click on the pencil to get out of FatBits.

10. Try the paint brush and make some custom erasers:

a.) Click on a different pattern. Click on the paint brush. Paint (drag) a line under your name with it.

b.) Double-click the paint brush. Click on a different brush shape in the box that appears. Click "ok." Try painting with your new brush shape.

c.) Click on the white pattern above "none". Now your brush is a custom-shaped eraser. You can make an eraser one pixel wide if you click the one pixel brush shape.

d.) Or if you double-click the brush, and pick the biggest square brush shape, you will have a transparent eraser that will allow you to see what you are about to erase before you click on it.

11. Pick another pattern if you like. (You can see more patterns by clicking the up and down arrows on the pattern scroll bar.) Click on the spray can . Spray paint a rectangle around your underlined name.
Note: you can make the paint transparent if you press the (command) button while you spray. This works for the paint bucket and brush too. Also, you can pull down Paint to Opaque, Transparent, or Paint on Black. As you might expect, opaque paint will cover anything; transparent paint only paints white surfaces; and Paint on Black only paints black surfaces.

12. Learn about enclosed shape tools:

```
12. Learn about enclosed shape tools:

    a.) Click on the Selected Line Pattern rectangle; then click on the black "pattern" above "None" to select a black line pattern. Click the Selected Fill Pattern rectangle, then click "None" for a fill pattern:

        ![Selected Fill Pattern](image)

    b.) Click on the rectangle enclosed shape tool. Make a rectangle around your spray painted rectangle. (Click and drag, upper left to lower right.)

    c.) Select (click on) a different fill pattern. Make a filled shape.

    d.) Click on a wider border width, click on the selected line pattern rectangle again, click on a different pattern for the selected line pattern, and try a different enclosed shape tool.

    The border width you select controls the widths of lines made by any line-making tool (including the enclosed shape tools) except the pencil.

    If you want a patterned shape with no border, select "none". It represents no border at all.

    The bottom three "enclosed" shape tools are not restricted to enclosed shapes. The "crushed box" (polygon) tool allows you to draw a series of connected lines: click each time you want to change direction. Double-click when you are done. The arc tool makes arcs, and the freehand tool is like the pencil, except that you can fill the shapes it draws, and select line widths for it.
```
13. In order to do things to an image in the "paint" layer, you select parts of it with the lasso, or the selection rectangle. You can do the following things to an image in the "paint" layer when it is selected with either of these tools:

a.) Click and drag the image anywhere in the window.

b.) Duplicate: press option as you click and drag; click again each time you want to leave another copy of the image in your trail.

c.) Leave a continuous trail of images: press both option and (command) as you click and drag. The spacing between the images is controlled by the line width in the Line and Border Widths selection box.

d.) Paste your drawing elsewhere: you can pull down Edit to Copy or Cut. Then use the grabber to move the worksheet; or quit and move to Word or MacWrite. Then you can pull down Edit to Paste, and paste your drawing wherever you like.

i.) When you Paste within SuperPaint, you can make the item you have Cut conform to a particular shape by making a new selection rectangle to "receive" the pasted drawing.

ii.) If you have Cut or Copied text from MacWrite or Word, and you want to paste it in SuperPaint, you can prepare a selection rectangle to receive it. When you paste, the text will "flow" to fit the selection rectangle. You can drag the corners of the rectangle to change its shape, and the text will "reflow" to fit the new shape. You can select new fonts, sizes and styles while the selection rectangle is "active" and the text within will change accordingly!

e.) Eliminate the selected image by any of the following:

i.) Pull down Edit to Cut. This puts it in the "clipboard" and you can bring it back later by pulling down Edit to Paste. The catch is that you can only have one thing in the clipboard at a time. So if you like what's in the clipboard, and you don't want to eliminate it with a second Cut, do either of the next two as an alternate:

ii.) Pull down Edit to Clear.

iii.) Press Backspace.

Note: Clear and Backspace have a finality that Cut does not have. If you Cut, what you cut is still in the clipboard, and it can be Pasted again; but when you Clear or Backspace an item, it is gone for good.
f.) You must use the **two layer selector**, \( \text{ctr} - l \), to **Cut** or **Copy** both layers ("paint" and "draw") at once.

g.) To transfer work from the paint layer to the draw layer, select what you want to transfer, then type `\% - E`.

14. But there are **big differences** between the lasso and the selection rectangle:

a.) When you click on the lasso \( \text{lasso} \), you can click and drag it in a circle around the target object. The lasso "tightens" to select **only** the target object.

   Note: you do not have to make a complete circle with the lasso: it is sufficient to get it about three-fourths of the way around the circle. (The tiny little piece of rope that dangles off of the lasso's knot is the "hot" point that generates the lasso "rope".)

   Note: to select everything in the drawing with the lasso, hold down the option key while you pull down Edit to Select All.

b.) You can drag lassoed objects over the top of patterns or other objects, so they appear to be "behind" the lassoed object. To **superimpose** letters such as Q, R, O, P, over a pattern or other objects, so they will show through the interior portion of the letter, you must intentionally create a "leak" in the letter, so the pattern beneath can "leak" through to the enclosed space within the letter. Then select the letters with the lasso as you normally would and drag them over the pattern.

c.) When you click on the selection rectangle \( \text{select} \), you can click and drag from upper left to lower right to make a selection rectangle around a target object. You are stuck with the rectangular shape and it selects **everything** inside the rectangle, including the empty space. So you cannot use the selection rectangle to superimpose one object over another. The "empty" space will obliterate any pattern or other objects which are "under" the rectangle.

   However you can assure that the rectangle is as small as possible by pressing the command key at the same time you are "clicking and dragging" the selection rectangle.

d.) As you have seen, objects can be rotated and flipped when they are selected with the selection rectangle. The lasso can't do any of these things. The selection rectangle also allows you to **freely rotate, stretch, distort, and slant** images; or put them into an artistic perspective:
To do this, select the image with the selection rectangle, then pull down **Paint**

**e.) You can do precision, top quality "shrinking" or "stretching" of objects in the selection rectangle without distortion, by pulling down **Edit** to **Scale**, and selecting the percentage change you want.** If you plan on doing this, don't fill your objects with a pattern until after the scaling operation is done.

**But why should I continue to run on this way; you get the idea!** Go ahead and play with **SuperPaint** on your own; that's the best way to learn about it. When you're done playing, come back and read the rest of this chapter. There are quite a few other facts that may be worth knowing. To help you in finding a particular feature, here's a short index of the **"SuperPaint"** Chapter's contents:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Topic</th>
<th>Step</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>artistic perspective</td>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>autoscroll</td>
<td>39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bit-mapped (paint) layer</td>
<td>intro</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>borders, paint layer</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>borders, draw layer</td>
<td>31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>changing layers</td>
<td>after 29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chooser</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>click and drag in draw layer</td>
<td>32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>clipboard, use of</td>
<td>21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>concentric circles</td>
<td>26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>constraining to horiz, vert, etc.</td>
<td>24, 25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cut or copy in both layers</td>
<td>13, 39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cutting and pasting, draw layer</td>
<td>33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cutting and pasting, paint layer</td>
<td>13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>differences, pnt vs drw layers</td>
<td>intro</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>disasters</td>
<td>23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>discrete objects</td>
<td>after 29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>distorting</td>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dotted lines</td>
<td>25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dragging images, paint layer</td>
<td>13, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>draw layer</td>
<td>30-36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>drawing in the draw layer</td>
<td>32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>duplicate, how to, draw layer</td>
<td>32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>duplicate, how to, paint layer</td>
<td>13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>editing patterns</td>
<td>27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>editing text in the draw layer</td>
<td>33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>enclosed shape tools</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>erasing, paint layer</td>
<td>8, 10, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>erasing, draw layer</td>
<td>36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FatBits</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bit editing</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>magnified editing</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>flip and rotate</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>free rotation</td>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>freehand tool</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>full page, view</td>
<td>28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>full screen work area</td>
<td>39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>getting started</td>
<td>1-7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>going back to work</td>
<td>18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>grabber</td>
<td>8, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>grid</td>
<td>23, 24, 30, 32</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**SuperPaint 56**
15. When you start to create something that you think you might want to save, pull down **File** to **Save**. A dialog box will appear with the insertion point winking in the small rectangle under the words "save document as:" Type the name of your work, the way you want it listed in the computer's directory (Make the name short, but memorable). The letters will flow out behind the moving insertion point. Click on the "save" button. The dialog box will go away, and the name you have selected will take the place of "untitled" on the title bar.

**Warning:** Save your work. If you don't, you will probably lose it. To save, pull down **File** to **Save** every ten minutes or so. The disk drive will hum for a few seconds while the computer stores your work on the disk. You will not have to fill in the dialog box again, unless you change your drawing's name.

16. Pull down **File** to **Page Setup...** . A dialog box titled **LaserWriter** or **ImageWriter**, depending upon which printer you selected with the Chooser, should appear. If you don't want to change anything, click the "ok" button, and the dialog box should go away.

**Note:** If you are using the **ImageWriter**, you should click **Tall Adjusted** in the **Page Setup...** dialog box. (This degrades the print quality slightly, but greatly improves the picture quality.)

17. When you are ready to quit **DO NOT** turn off the computer. If you turn off the computer without going through proper shutdown procedure, you may lose hours of work, or even damage your disk.

a.) When you are ready to quit, pull down **File** to **Quit**. If you have not saved already, a dialog box will ask you if you want to save your work. Click "yes" or "no." After the disk drive hums briefly, the desktop will reappear. If you can already see the desktop, skip this step.

b.) Once you are back to the desktop, the best way to quit is to pull down **Special** to **Shut Down**. This ejects all disks and resets the computer. If you are done, you can turn off the computer; or if you want change startup disks and do something totally different with the computer, you can reboot with a different startup disk.

```
scaling precisely 14
scrapbook, use of 21
scrolling, auto 39
selected fill pattern 8, 12
selecting in the paint layer 13, 14
selecting in the draw layer 30, 32, 33
selection rectangle 13, 14
send to back 35
show page 28
shutting down 17
slanting 14
spray can 11
starting up 1-7
stretching 14
superimposing letters 14
```

**SuperPaint window and icons** 7
**tall adjusted** 16
**text, draw layer (the only way)** 33, 34
**text, paint layer (don't do it!)** 8
**toggle, paint/draw** after 29
**trail of duplicate images** 8
**transparent paint** 11
**transfer graphics betwn layers** 13, 39
**transfer graphics, other docs** 13, 21, 39
**two layer selector** 13, 39
**undo, use of** 23
**view full page** 28
**window, SuperPaint** 7
c.) You can also quit by dragging the disk into the trash. After Mac spits out the disk, turn him off.

d.) If you want to keep the present disk as the startup disk, and keep its directory window on the screen; perhaps while you copy a file from one disk to another, select (click on) the disk icon, and pull down File to Eject, or type \-E. Mac will spit out the disk that was selected.

18. When you want to go back to work on the same drawing, boot the system, and open the directory window. There should be a document icon there with the name you gave your paper in step 15. Reopen your drawing by double-clicking that icon.

19. When you are ready to print; Save; then do the following:

a.) Make sure the printer is turned on:

i.) If you are using a LaserWriter, the On/Off switch is on the left end, just around the backside corner from the Power Cord Socket:

![Front View of LaserWriter](image)

The green light on the front flashes as the LaserWriter warms up; then the yellow light starts flashing to show that the LaserWriter is processing a test print. The LaserWriter should deliver its own test print within two minutes. The yellow light will go out when the LaserWriter delivers the test print. When the green light is steady, the LaserWriter is ready to print.

ii.) If you are using an ImageWriter, turn it on by depressing the on/off button, which is on the right side of the ImageWriter's top. Three green lights adjacent to the on/off button should come on. If you are using an old ImageWriter, there will be only two green lights. (If you don't get the right number of green lights, or the ImageWriter needs paper, and you don't know what to do, read the "ImageWriter" chapter.)
b.) Pull down File to Print. When the dialog box appears click the "ok" button. It may take a minute or two, but if all goes well, Mac ought to start printing.

c.) In case of difficulty...

i.) ...if nothing happens, you may have skipped steps 3, 6, or 16: that is, you must have printer driver icon for the printer you intend to use present in your system folder; the AppleTalk "on-off" switch must be set the right way on the Control Panel; the appropriate printer and port must have been selected in Chooser; and File must have been pulled down to Page Setup...

ii.) ...if something goes wrong during the ImageWriter printing process, first turn off the printer by pressing its on/off button; then press [command-period]. (Mac will tell you to stop the printing by pressing [command-period] only, but this turns out to be much too slow.)

20. To avoid excessive use of the mouse: Use the keyboard command letters instead, which appear to the right of many of the options in the pull down menus.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>File</th>
<th>Edit</th>
<th>Options</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>New</td>
<td>Undo</td>
<td>Scrolling Off/On</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Open</td>
<td>Cut</td>
<td>Nudge Up</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Save</td>
<td>Copy</td>
<td>Nudge Down</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Quit</td>
<td>Paste</td>
<td>Nudge Left</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Print</td>
<td>Copy to Paint/Draw</td>
<td>Nudge Right</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Duplicate</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Select All</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Windows</th>
<th>Draw</th>
<th>Style</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Hide Palettes</td>
<td>Bring to Front</td>
<td>Plain</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hide Back Layer</td>
<td>Send to Back</td>
<td>Bold</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reduced View</td>
<td>Group</td>
<td>Italics</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Full Screen</td>
<td>Ungroup</td>
<td>Text Pattern</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Reshape</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

21. There are two ways to move your SuperPaint graphics into other documents: you can use the clipboard or the Scrapbook.

a.) Clipboard: when the other document is on the same disk with your SuperPaint creation:
i.) Select the portion of the graphic which you want to transfer; and pull
down Edit to Copy. Quit SuperPaint.

ii.) Open your other document; click where you want the graphic to be,
then pull down Edit to Paste. Your graphic should appear.

b.) Scrapbook: when the other document is on the same disk with your Su-
perPaint creation:

i.) Select the portion of the graphic which you want to transfer; and
Cut (or Copy) it.

ii.) Pull down to Scrapbook, and when the scrapbook window
opens, Paste your item. Click the close box.

If there are several different portions you would like to paste, repeat steps i. and
ii. Each time you paste into the scrapbook, another page is created. This is an
advantage over the clipboard, because the clipboard will only accept one por-
tion at a time. Once you have pasted something into the scrapbook, it is safe;
you can do anything else you might want to do: use the clipboard, quit for the
day, or take a vacation. What you paste in the scrapbook is safely stored on the
disk, it will not disappear when the power goes off, like things which are stored
in the clipboard.

iii.) When you are ready to paste the Scrapbook-stored graphic into the
other document, pull down to Scrapbook; and, when the scrapbook
appears, page through it, by clicking on the scroll bar below its window,
until you find the graphic you want.

iv.) Cut (or Copy) the item from the scrapbook. Click the close box.

v.) Click in the other document where you want your SuperPaint graphic
to be, and Paste.

22. To save a "changed" document without destroying the original: pull down File to
Save As…. Type in the new name for your changed document. Click the "save"
button.

23. Disasters, problems and solutions:

a.) If you make a mistake, you can undo your last action by pulling down Edit
to Undo. But the catch is if you make even ONE attempt to fix your mistake
before you try Undo, all you can "Undo" is your attempt. So when you screw
up, get your hands off of the mouse and the keyboard. Stop, think, be cool. Then
undo.
b.) If you pull down File to Save every ten minutes or so, and a disaster happens, you can pull down File to Revert, and your picture will "revert" to the way is was the last time you saved it.

c.) Leaks can be a disaster: If you are attempting to fill the interior of an object from the paint bucket, and the object leaks, you will cover your entire drawing with the pattern from the bucket. If you accidentally click the mouse more than once (and this is not unlikely, because the paint bucket often suffers from "delayed action"), you will not be able to use undo and your drawing will be destroyed. (Unless you have saved recently!)

d.) Do not use the paint bucket while in FatBits. It's too easy to spill it through a leak without knowing it. If this happens, your work will be ruined. (Unless you have saved recently!)

e.) After you have pasted a drawing in Word or MacWrite: be careful not to type anything while the drawing is still selected. It will disappear.

f.) If your mouse seems to have become jerky and insensitive, the Grid probably got turned on by accident. Pull down the Options to Grid and Ruler... and see. If the Grid Snap On box has an "X" in it, click it off.

24. For precise positioning of letters and parts of your drawing:

a.) Pull down Options to Grid and Ruler..., and click the Grid Snap On box. This sets up grid lines on SuperPaint, and the text, etc. will align only on the grid lines. You can set the grid line spacing, and whether or not they will show, in the dialog box. Even if you can see the grid lines, they will not print.

b.) If you use the shift key when you drag, you can only drag horizontally or vertically; you can only draw lines in directions that are whole number multiples of 45°, and you can only make squares and circles (as opposed to rectangles and ovals). When used this way, the shift key is said to constrain the tools.

This is particularly valuable when you want to erase next to a long horizontal or vertical edge: Position the eraser exactly where you want to begin; then press the shift key, while you click and drag in the general direction you want to go. The eraser will move in a precisely vertical or horizontal direction, and your shaky human hand won't accidentally wipe out part of the edge.

25. When you draw lines in SuperPaint:

a.) You can pour paint "into" any line, including pencil lines, by precisely positioning the tip of the paint "drip" from the paint bucket on the line before you click. This may take some practice.
b.) **Shift** constrains the direction of the line and polygon (squashed box) tools to multiples of 45 degrees. **Shift** constrains the direction of the pencil to horizontal and vertical.

But you really don't need to constrain the line or polygon tools to draw multiples of 45 degrees: you can "eyeball" it. The only truly "straight" lines in *SuperPaint* are multiples of 45 degrees; all others have a "stair step" look to them. All you have to do is twiddle with the end point of the line until the line looks straight. When it looks straight, it is at a multiple of 45 degrees.

c.) **To draw dotted lines:**

**Method 1:** Lasso a dot, and drag it with the *-option buttons pressed. To draw horizontal and vertical lines, drag the dot with the *-option-shift buttons pressed. This method takes practice to get uniform dot spacing.

**Method 2:** Select a diagonal strip pattern. Double-click the brush. Click on the single dot brush pattern. Drag the brush wherever you want dotted lines. To draw horizontal and vertical lines, drag the brush with the shift button pressed. This method works best for horizontal and vertical lines, and will not work at all for diagonal lines.

26. **To draw concentric circles (one circle centered inside of another):**

   a.) Click the pencil, then click a single dot. This dot will be the common center of your concentric circles.

   b.) Pull down **Options to Paint from Center**. Little crosshairs should appear in the enclosed shape tools.

   c.) Click the circle tool. The mouse pointer itself should turn into a crosshair.

   d.) Position the mouse pointer crosshairs exactly on the dot. The crosshairs will be white in the center if they are exactly on the dot.

   e.) Draw the first circle.

   f.) Position the crosshairs exactly on the dot again.

   g.) Draw the second circle.

27. You can **edit a pattern** by pulling down **Options to Edit Patterns**.

   a.) When the dialog box pops up, click on the pattern in the **Pattern Palette** that
you would like to alter; if you don't want to alter an existing pattern, click on an empty pattern box. (You may have to use the Pattern Scrollbar to find one.)

b.) In the box on the left, use the pencil to edit or create a FatBit pattern you like; the actual size pattern will appear in the box on the right.

c.) When you've got it the way you want it, click the Save button; if you don't like your creation, click the Revert button.

d.) Click "ok".

28. To see the entire 8" X 10" worksheet, pull down Windows to Reduced View. The entire 8" X 10" worksheet is represented in the rectangle on the left. You can continue to work in the space on the right, any changes will be reflected in the reduced view on the left. To escape, press ⌘-W.

29. To save space on your SuperPaint disk, you can combine many little SuperPaint pictures on one 8" X 10" worksheet. List the names of the little pictures under Get Info for the file icon of that worksheet. If you want a picture "catalog" of the whole page, do a "⌘-shift-3" while in Reduced View, then modify and use the "screen 0" MacPaint document that is produced as your catalog.

How to Use SuperPaint's Draw "Layer":

Toggle the paint/draw toggle, ⬇️, to the draw "layer" ⬆️ by clicking on the drafting compass icon. If you type your text while you are working in the paint "layer" (when the paintbrush icon is selected) you won't be able to change it later.

The tools in the draw "layer" are used to create discrete "objects." Each of these objects can be manipulated independently. You can go back and revise any object at any time without affecting other objects you have created. (This is different because, in the paint "layer," once a selected object is released, it is pasted there for good unless you erase it; and if you erase it, there will be a hole where the object was.)

Preparing a graphic display with SuperPaint's Draw "Layer" is a matter of creating a collection of "objects," putting the objects together, then experimenting with the objects (changing and repositioning them) until you have achieved the effect you want. Let's prepare a simple advertisement so you can see how all this works.

30. Decide how big you want the advertisement to be. (Mine will be 2.5" wide by 2"). You will need rulers to be sure your dimensions are right: pull down Options to Grid & Rulers.... When the dialog box pops up, click an "X" into the Show rulers box;
then click "ok." A set of rulers should appear along the left and top edges of SuperPaint's Draw "Layer" window. Here's how make a box the right size:

a.) Click the **Rectangles** tool. Click "none" for a fill pattern.

b.) Click and drag from upper left to lower right. (You can tell the dimensions exactly because the little moving dotted lines on the rulers show exactly where the pointer is.) Your ad box should look like this:

![Diagram of a box with handles and pointers]

c.) You can click on the pointer and use it to drag any of the four tiny black boxes (called **handles**), as needed, to readjust the size and/or shape of your rectangle. Similarly, you can shift the entire rectangle without changing its size or shape by clicking and dragging anywhere on its lines.

d.) When your ad box is just right, lock it so you won't accidentally move it later: Pull down **Draw** to **Lock**. (You can unlock it later, if you want to move it again.)

31. Now make a border inside of your ad:

a.) Click the round corner rectangle tool.

b.) Click on white (above the word "None") for the **Selected Fill Pattern**. The **Selected Fill Pattern** box should change to plain white:

![Selected Fill Pattern box]

c.) Click the little black triangle to the **Selected Line Pattern** box, Click on the line width you want for your border; then click on the pattern you want from the **Pattern Palette**.
d.) Draw your border, paying attention to the rulers to be sure it is the same distance from all four sides of the ad box. If it is a little bit off center, remember you can jiggle it into position by clicking and dragging it. When it's just right, lock it.

32. Now make a drawing to go in it. (Because you will be doing freehand work, you will need to make sure the grid is off while you are working on your drawing. Pull down Options to Grid & Rulers..., and check the dialog box. The grid aligns objects in SuperPaint's Draw "Layer" along imaginary grid lines, which keeps things neat, but makes it impossible to do fine freehand adjustments in some cases.)

a.) Click the circle tool. Change the Selected Line Pattern back to black, the Selected Fill Pattern to white, and the Line Width back to narrow.

b.) Use the mouse to draw a quarter inch circle well outside of your ad box.

c.) While the circle is still selected (You can tell it's selected because it has handles!), press \[\texttt{Command-D}\] to duplicate it four times. Now you have a diagonal row of five overlapping circles like this:

```
·+··
·····
·····
·····
·····
```

d.) Click on the pointer, \[\texttt{Drag}\] then click and drag the circles until they make an arc instead of a row. (They should look like a small bunch of lollypops.)

e.) Choose a different pattern for each lollypop by clicking on it, then clicking on a fill pattern.

```
·····
·····
·····
·····
```

f.) Select all five of the lollypops by using the pointer to box them in with a dotted line rectangle: drag from above and to their left to below and to their right. Pull down Draw to Group. Now the bunch of lollypops is a single object instead of five objects. Move (click and drag) the lollypops into your ad box.

g.) Click the line tool. Click the Selected Line Pattern box, select the proper line width for a lollypop stick; then click on the pattern you want for the stick from the Pattern Palette. Draw lollypop sticks attached to each lollypop, similar to the picture at the top of the next page.
j.) Pull down **Edit** to **Select All**; then lock your picture again.

33. **To type text in SuperPaint:**

a.) Click on the text tool, ![text tool](image). Click where you want to start typing, some place away from your ad. (the mouse pointer should have turned into an "I" beam). A "dotted line rectangle" will form where you are typing the text. Don't worry about it. You will be able to make the text conform to any shape you want.

b.) Click on the "pointer" ![pointer icon](image) icon in the draw tools; then select (click on) the text you want to edit. Little black "drag boxes" should appear on a box that surrounds your text:

i.) Click and drag on them to flow the text into the shape you want.

ii.) Pull down **Font** or **Size** or **Style** to make the text suit your preferences. Font sizes that are listed in Outline style, will probably look the best. You can pull down **Style to Left Justify, Center, or Right** to get the text to be centered, say for a title page; or aligned on the left margin, etc.

iii.) **Cut** and **Paste**, **Copy**, and backspace work here the same as in a word processor:

   a.) To correct single letter errors, use the mouse to put the "I" beam after the letter you don't like, and click. (This moves the insertion point.) Backspace over the offending letter, and type in your correction. The backspace key is handy. It allows you to correct little spelling and punctuation errors quickly; but don't use it to wipe out whole words and sentences; instead follow the directions below.

   b.) To correct more than a few letters: **select** what you don't like by **clicking and dragging** over it. Then, if you want to **destroy** it, press backspace. If you only want to **move** it, pull down **Edit to Cut**; then move the insertion point (move the "I" beam and click) to where you want the deleted word or line to appear; then pull down **Edit to Paste**.
Cut and Paste are among the most powerful of the word processor commands. They are what allow you to pick up and move what you've already typed to a new location. (If you want, copy some words you've already typed to another part of your work, and if you don't want to delete the original, follow the above directions; but pull down Edit to Copy instead of Cut.)

iv.) If you want the background to be visible "through" the letters, select "none" for a fill pattern; otherwise the letters will have the selected pattern for a background.

Note: Later, if you are back in the paint "layer," and you want to edit the text you typed, be sure to change the paint/draw toggle back to the draw "layer" by clicking on the drafting compass icon.

34. Let's practice working the text features of SuperPaint's Draw "Layer":

a.) Click the text tool, then click the space to the right of your ad. Type the words, "Five Flavors." Pull down Font, Size, and Style, until you get a good combination. Click "none" for a fill pattern.

b.) Click the selection pointer tool, then click and drag "Five Flavors" onto your ad. Play with the text position until it looks right. You may have to move your picture around. If so, select your picture and pull down Draw to Unlock.

Tweak the picture and the text some more. When everything is perfect, lock it up again.

c.) Click the text tool, then click the space to the right of your ad again. Change the font size to 9, and the style to Plain. Type a short paragraph for the body of your ad.

d.) Click on the selection pointer again.

e.) Drag your "paragraph" block into your ad. Try push and pulling on the handles until it fits.
35. Let's play with the different draw layers a little bit:

   a.) Select All of your ad. Unlock it, and Ungroup it.

   b.) Select the edge of your ad box. Fill it with black. Your ad should now have a suave looking two-tone border:

   c.) Select the round corner rectangle border which you originally placed inside of your ad box. Unlock it. Fill it with "none." Ooops! Now you can see that each object is opaque (unless it's filled with "none.").

   d.) Refill your round corner rectangle border with (opaque) white.

   e.) Click on Five Flavors. Pull down Draw to Send to Back. When you do this Five Flavors isn't gone. It has just moved to the bottom of the pile. If you don't believe it, select the rest of the pile, and drag it aside!

36. To erase portions of your drawing:

   a.) Make a box. Click on white (above "None") for the Selected Line Pattern and the Selected Fill Pattern. The box should be invisible except for the "handles."

   b.) Drag the "invisible" box over part of your ad. Part of the ad should disappear as though it was erased. And unlike the paint "layer" you can "unerase" it anytime you want to!

37. If you want to continuously change a shape in the draw layer:

   a.) Draw a shape with the polygon tool, \( \square \). Click each time you change direction; double-click when you "close" the polygon at the end.
b.) Click on the pointer and select the polygon. Pull down **Draw to Reshape**. "Handles" should appear at each vertex (corner) of the polygon. You can "grab" these handles (click and drag) and pull the polygon into whatever shape you want.

c.) If you want more handles, hold the command button down while you drag at a handle, and you will pull another handle out of it!

38. **When you are working between layers:**

   a.) You must use the **two layer selector** to *Cut* or *Copy* both layers ("paint" and "draw") at once

   b.) To transfer work from one layer to the other, select what you want to transfer, then type 

39. **When you want a work area larger than the window:**

   a.) The "autoscroll" feature will automatically slide your work area beneath the screen, if you attempt to draw lines or selection areas outside the limits of the window. To turn off the "autoscroll" feature, pull down **Options to Turn Scrolling off**.

   b.) If you want the tools and Palette out of the way, pull down **Windows to Hide Palettes**.

   c.) If you want the window to be as big as Mac's screen, pull down **Windows to Full Screen**.

40. **Don't forget!** There is a topic index between steps 14. and 15.
This chapter assumes that you want to learn word processing as rapidly as possible.

1. In order to get started, you'll need a Macintosh computer, and a work disk with MacWrite on it. (If your only copy of MacWrite is a master disk, you need to study the "How to Copy" chapter first, and make a second work disk copy. It is dangerous to use your only copy of an application: what will you do if you damage it?)

   a.) Connect the power cord and mouse to the back of the Mac. If you have an ImageWriter printer, or an external disk drive, or you have access to an AppleTalk system, connect them too. Study the little icons (pictures) above the connectors in the back of the Mac: they will help you to decide which peripheral (accessory) connects where. (If you use it, the AppleTalk connector must be plugged into the port below the printer icon.) Plug your Mac into a surge protector or a grounded (three prong) wall outlet.

   b.) Plug the keyboard into the jack at the base of the front of the Mac. Make sure the keyboard's plugs are right side up when you insert them, or you will bend the keyboard plug contacts.

   c.) Turn it on. The off-on switch is just above the power cord connection in the back. The Mac will "beep" when you turn it on.

   d.) Adjust the brightness. You can feel the knurled brightness knob under the ledge just below the apple logo, on the lower left front side of the computer. Don't turn the brightness any higher than necessary to see comfortably. The lower you keep the brightness, the longer the "picture tube" will last.

2. Hold the MacWrite work disk the way it is in this little picture: but with your right thumb over the label. Slide it all the way into the disc slot below the screen, until it snaps in and the disc drive starts to click and hum.

   The computer is gathering system information from the disk which is necessary for its operation; this process is sometimes called "booting the system." Any disk that "boots the system" is called a startup disk. A startup disk must have a system file on it. If Mac spits the disk out when you try to insert it, it's because the disk doesn't have a system file, or the disk is defective.)

   After about 18 seconds, the disk drive will stop and the screen should look like the picture on the next page:
The menu bar containing the words File Edit View Special is across the top of the screen. The desktop, which is the rest of the screen below the menu bar, should be blank except for the disk icon and trash icon on the right side. (If the desktop looks instead like the screen diagram below, no harm has been done. Someone left it that way when they last quit.)

3. There should be a pointer somewhere on the screen. The pointer moves around on the computer desktop when you roll the mouse around on a real tabletop. Move the mouse to position the tip of the pointer in the center of the disk icon and "double-click" (tickaticka) the mouse button without moving the mouse. This opens the disk's directory window; and now your screen should look something like this:

The icons in the directory window above represent the computer files which are recorded on the disk:

MacWrite 72
a.) The application icons represent files which tell the computer how to do something special; in this case, how to be a word processor.

b.) Icons with a "dog-eared" (bent-over) corner represent documents which you create with applications like MacWrite.

c.) The system folder contains the System which tells Mac how to be a computer. The system also holds the fonts (type faces); and the desk accessories which are discussed in the appendix. Double-click the System Folder, and open it up:

![System Folder](image)

d.) The Finder creates the desktop and the icons which allow you to find your way around in the Mac.

e.) The Clipboard File is a "clipboard" which allows you to carry words or pictures from one document to another. The clipboard will only hold one piece of information at a time.

f.) The Scrapbook File is a place you can store words and pictures to use over and over in different documents. The scrapbook will hold many different pictures or pieces of information at once.

g.) The LaserWriter and ImageWriter are printer "drivers." If you want the computer to print documents on paper, you must have a driver for the printer you want to use. If you will be the first to use a LaserWriter printer after it has been turned on in the morning, you will also need a Laser Prep. If the printer driver you want is missing, see the "How to Copy" chapter.
4. Close the system folder window by putting the tip of the pointer in the close box, and clicking once, without moving the mouse. (This is called "clicking on" the close box.)

Note: The box in the lower right corner of each window is called a "Size Box." If you put the tip of the pointer in it, and then hold the mouse button down while you "drag" the size box, you can change the shape of the window. Also, you can move the entire window by using this same strategy to "click and drag" the title bar around. This manipulation of windows can be quite useful when you are trying to arrange things so that you can see the contents of more than one window at once. Some windows have a "zoom" box in their upper right corner. If you click on it, it will "toggle" the window between full size, and some other size you may have selected with the "Size Box."

5. Click and hold the mouse button, while you attempt to drag down the word View in the menu bar. A list should appear beneath it. The word View will not drag, but as you pull the pointer down, each line in the list is highlighted (blackened) in sequence. When the line by Size is highlighted, release the mouse button. (This process is called "pulling down" View to by Size.) The icons in the directory window should change into a list of the files and applications arranged in order of size, largest first. (The size is measured in "k." You may have to adjust the size box to see it.) If you wish, you can instead rearrange the list alphabetically by pulling down View to by Name, etc. Try it, then change the window back to by Icon.

6. The Apple menu, ⚑, lists desk accessories on your disk, such as the Scrapbook and Chooser. Use Chooser before you begin, to prepare Mac for the kind of printing he will do when you are ready to print your creation: pull down ⚑ to Chooser. When the Chooser window appears....

   a.) If you will be using a LaserWriter or an ImageWriter connected to the AppleTalk network, click on the "active" button, the printer icon, and the printer's name, if they do not "highlight" when you click on them, then something is wrong.
If the printer icon isn't there, you need to go back to step 3g. If the printer's name isn't there, or if it refuses to highlight (white print on black) when you click on it, then the printer is not turned on; or the printer and(or) your Mac are not connected to the AppleTalk network.

b.) If you will be printing on an ImageWriter connected to your Mac only, click the "Inactive" button for AppleTalk; then click on the ImageWriter icon, and click on the icon of the printer port to which the printer is connected. You can tell which port by looking to see where the ImageWriter plugs into Mac's back.

c.) Click the Chooser's close box.

Note: If your Chooser doesn't look like the one in the diagram, pull down ⌘ to About the Finder. A little card should appear that tells you the finder is number 5.3. (If it's not, you need to replace the system, finder, and printer driver icons. "How to Copy" tells how to do this.) Put the little card away by clicking on it.
7. Double-click (boot) the MacWrite application icon. When the MacWrite window opens, it should look something like this:

![MacWrite window diagram]

8. The menu bar you see across the top works the same way as the menu bar on the desk top. Pull down File to Save. A dialog box will appear with the insertion point winking in the small rectangle under the words "save current document as:" Type the name of the paper (document) you are going to write, the way you want it listed in the computer's directory (Make the name short, but memorable). The letters will flow out behind the moving insertion point. Click on the "save" button. The dialog box will go away, and the name you have selected will take the place of "untitled" on the title bar. You will not have to fill in the dialog box again, unless you change your drawing's name.

**Warning:** Save what you write. If you don't, you will probably lose all your work. To save, pull down File to Save every ten minutes or every time you get up to get coffee or go to the bathroom. The disk drive will hum for a few seconds while the computer stores your work on the disk. It's cheap insurance!!!

Note: if you want to change the title of a document, do it when you are back on the desktop. Click and drag through the title under the document icon. The mouse pointer will turn into an I-beam. Now type the new name. Click elsewhere on the desktop to make the change permanent.

9. Pull down File to Page Setup... A dialog box titled LaserWriter or ImageWriter, depending upon which printer you selected with the Chooser, should appear. If you don't want to change anything, click the "ok" button, and the dialog box should go away.

**Note:** If you are using the ImageWriter, and you include graphics in your MacWrite document, you should click Tall Adjusted in the Page Setup... dialog box. (This degrades the print quality slightly, but greatly improves the picture quality.)
10. Do this to type the title as you want it to appear at the top of your paper:

   a.) Click the **Align-center** box on the ruler. Now the insertion point is winking at the center of the top of the "page," and whatever you type will be centered.

   b.) Pull down **Font** to **Helvetica**. Pull down **Style** to **Bold**. You have just selected the font and style for your title.

   Note: The LaserWriter does better work, and prints faster if you use all LaserWriter fonts such as **Helvetica**, **Times**, **Symbol**, **Zapf Chancery**, **Zapf Dingbats**, **N.Helvetica**. If you are using the ImageWriter, use ImageWriter fonts such as **Geneva**, **Chicago**, **Venice**, **London**, or **San Francisco**.

   c.) Type your title.

   Note: Don't be afraid of making mistakes; you can easily change anything in the paper, anytime you want to change it:

   a.) To correct single letter errors, use the mouse to put the "*beam"** after the letter you don't like, and click. (This moves the insertion point.) Backspace over the offending letter, and type in your correction. The backspace key is handy. It allows you to correct little spelling and punctuation errors quickly; but don't use it to wipe out whole words and sentences; instead follow the directions below.

   b.) To correct more than a few letters: **select** what you don't like by clicking and dragging over it. Then, if you want to destroy it, press **backspace**. If you only want to move it, pull down **Edit to Cut**; then move the insertion point (move the "*beam" and click) to where you want the deleted word or line to appear; then pull down **Edit to Paste**. (For more selection tricks, see step 15.)

   **Cut** and **Paste** are among the most powerful of the word processor commands. They are what allow you to pick up and move what you've already typed to a new location. (If you want, copy some words you've already typed to another part of your paper, and if you don't want to delete the original, follow the above directions; but pull down **Edit to Copy** instead of **Cut**.)

11. Get set to type the first paragraph of your paper. Pull **Format** down to **Insert Ruler**. Click the left alignment box on the new ruler. Now the insertion point is winking on the left, and whatever you type will have an even left hand margin. Pull **Style** down to **Plain**. You have just changed the style to what it will be from now on, until you change it again. Begin typing. If you make mistakes, correct them using cut and paste, or backspace as discussed above.

   **Warning**: **Do not use return when you get to the end of a line**, unless you want a new paragraph. The "wordwrap" feature of the word processor takes care of this automatically. If you use return to start a new lines, it defeats the word processor, and makes a terrible mess. **Use return only to change paragraphs.**

   **Warning**: **Do not use the space bar to indent** your paragraphs. This also messes up the word processor. If later, you want to indent your paragraphs, do it as described in step 18.

12. Use **scrolling** to move around in your paper. If you want to go back to the beginning, click and drag the little white **Scroll Box** up to the top end of the scroll bar. If you want to scroll backwards a line at a time, click on the **Scroll Arrow** that points up. If you want to scroll backwards a screen full at a time, click on the grey space of the **Scroll Bar** in between the scroll box and the scroll arrow. Of course, dragging the
scroll box down, or using the downside scroll arrow or scroll bar, reverses the process. (The number inside the scroll box is the page number being displayed on the screen.)

13. When you are ready to quit **DO NOT** turn off the computer. If you turn off the computer without going through proper shutdown procedure, you may lose hours of work, or even damage your disk.

a.) When you are ready to quit, pull down **File to Quit.** If you have not saved already, a dialog box will ask you if you want to save your work. Click "yes" or "no." After the disk drive hums briefly, the desktop will reappear. If you can already see the desktop, skip this step.

b.) Once you are back to the desktop, the best way to quit is to pull down **Special to Shut Down.** This ejects all disks and resets the computer. If you are done, you can turn off the computer; or if you want change startup disks and do something totally different with the computer, you can reboot with a different startup disk.

c.) You can also quit by dragging the disk into the trash. After Mac spits out the disk, turn him off.

d.) If you want to keep the present disk as the startup disk, and keep its directory window on the screen; perhaps while you copy a file from one disk to another, select (click on) the disk icon, and pull down **File to Eject,** or type [⌘]~E. Mac will spit out the disk that was selected.

14. When you want to go back to work on the same paper, boot the system, and open the directory window. There should be a document icon there with the name you gave your paper in step 8. Reopen your paper by double-clicking that icon. When your paper opens, use the scroll bar to get to where you want to start typing.

15. When you are ready to print; **Save;** then do the following:

a.) **Make sure the printer is turned on:**

i.) If you are using a **LaserWriter,** the **On/Off switch** is on the left end, just around the backside corner from the **Power Cord Socket:**
The green light on the front flashes as the LaserWriter warms up; then the yellow light starts flashing to show that the LaserWriter is processing a test print. The LaserWriter should deliver its own test print within two minutes. The yellow light will go out when the LaserWriter delivers the test print. When the green light is on steady, the LaserWriter is ready to print.

ii.) If you are using an **ImageWriter**, turn it on by depressing the on/off button, which is on the right side of the ImageWriter's top. Three green lights adjacent to the on/off button should come on. If you are using an old ImageWriter, there will be only two green lights. (If you don't get the right number of green lights, or the ImageWriter needs paper, and you don't know what to do, read the "**ImageWriter**" chapter.)

b.) Pull down **File to Print**. When the dialog box appears...

i.) ...for the **LaserWriter**, click the "ok" button.

ii.) ...for the **ImageWriter** click the **Best** or **Faster** or **Draft** button (**Best** is slow, good-looking, and most copyable; **Draft** is fast and awful; **Faster** is in between.); then click the "ok" button.

It may take a minute or two, but if all goes well, Mac ought to start printing.

c.) In case of difficulty...

i.) ...if nothing happens, you may have skipped steps 3, 6, or 9: that is, you must have printer driver icon for the printer you intend to use present in your system folder; the AppleTalk "on-off" switch must be set the right way and the appropriate printer and port must have been selected in **Chooser**; and **File** must have been pulled down to **Page Setup**...

ii.) ...if something goes wrong during the ImageWriter printing process, **first, turn off the printer by pressing its on/off button; then press MacWrite**...
It would probably be possible to type an entire paper using only the above steps; but there may be some other things you would like to be able to do when you prepare your paper. Here are some possibilities:

16. To emphasize characters with underlining, Italics, etc:
   a.) Select (click and drag over) the words to be emphasized.
   b.) Pull down Style to whichever type of emphasis you want.
   c.) To turn off the emphasis, pull down Style to Plain text.

17. To undo a stupid blunder such as a cut or backspace which accidentally wiped out a lot of hard work, FREEZE, do not press a single button or key!!! If you press even one key after doing your stupid blunder, you will not be able to undo it. Now, after your head has cooled and the smoke has cleared, pull down Edit to Undo, and all your hard work should magically reappear.

18. To set paragraph (or “first line”) indent: Pull down Edit to Show Ruler. Then click and drag the Indent symbol (which is usually embedded in the black triangle at the left end of the ruler) to the half inch point or wherever you want the paragraph indent to be. This will create a new paragraph, complete with indent, whenever you press return. This is the only way to indent paragraphs; do not ever use the space bar to indent your paragraphs. Doing so will occasionally screw up your documents.

19. To set tabs: Pull down Edit to Show Ruler. Then click and drag the tab triangles out of the tab well along the ruler to wherever you want the tabs to be. Regular tabs align the left ends of the tabbed words; decimal tabs align the decimal points of...
numbers. Once the tabs are set, they work about the same as the tabs on a typewriter. If you change your mind, just drag the tabs off of the ruler, and they will disappear.

20. To change the spacing of your lines, click on the appropriate spacing box. If you want the spacing to be the same as a typewriter, click the "6 lines/inch" box. If you want your work to be aligned along both the left and right edges, click the Justify box.

21. To set margins: Pull down Edit to Show Ruler. Then click and drag the small black triangles at either end of the ruler to where you want the margins to be.

   Note: The setting of tabs, indents, line spacing, and margins will affect your paper from the specific location in the paper where you have placed a ruler, as you continue to type, forward. It will not affect material that has already been typed. If you want to change what has already been typed, you must insert and(or) change other rulers before that material.

   Any time you change the fonts or font style or point size, that change will be in effect from that point, as you continue to type, forward. If you want to alter the font, style, or point size for a particular part of your text, you must first select that text:

22. Here are some more selection tricks.

   a.) To select an entire word: Double click anywhere in the word.

   b.) To select an odd portion of any length of your paper: Click where you want the selection to begin; and "shift"-click where you want it to end.

   c.) To rapidly select many lines: Click and drag down the invisible selection bar in the left margin of your "page."

23. To number the pages in your paper: Pull down Format to Open Header. (or Open Footer) A header window should appear:

Drag the Page number icon wherever you like below the header ruler. It will number each of your pages in whatever font you've selected for the insertion point. If you want your page numbering to start at some number other than one, pull down Format to Set Page #.... Type in the desired page number and click "ok."
Note: MacWrite automatically decides where your page breaks will be. Page breaks are where the printer goes on to the next page during the printing process. You can tell where MacWrite has put a page break, because a fine horizontal dotted line will suddenly appear across your page at that point. If you don’t like MacWrite’s choice, click where you want the page break to be, then pull down Format to Insert Page Break. MacWrite will renumber the pages automatically.

If you’d like something else such as a title to appear on each page, type it below the header ruler. If you want each page stamped with the current date and time, go ahead and drag those icons down too. People will think you’re weird, but if it feels good, go ahead. Click the close box on the header window.

24. There are three ways to put drawings or other graphics into MacWrite: you can use the clipboard, Art Grabber+, or the Scrapbook.

a.) Clipboard: when MacWrite is on the same disk with graphics programs such as Excel, MacPaint or MacDraw:

i.) Create the graphic in Excel, MacPaint or MacDraw, select it, then pull down Edit to Copy. Quit the graphic program.

ii.) Open your MacWrite document; click where you want the graphic to be, then pull down Edit to Paste. Your graphic should appear in your MacWrite document.

b.) Art Grabber+: If the graphic already exists on your disk as a MacPaint document, you can use Art Grabber+ to "grab" it while you are working within MacWrite.

i.) Pull down to Art Grabber+. The word "Grabber+" will appear on the menu bar.

ii.) Pull down Grabber+ to Open. A directory of your MacPaint documents will appear. You may need to open a folder to get at them. Double click on the title of the MacPaint document you want. It will appear in the Art Grabber window.

iii.) Click and drag the "+" mouse pointer from the upper left corner to the lower right corner of the part of the MacPaint document you want to use. Pull down Edit to Copy. Click the close box of the Art Grabber window.

iv.) Click where you want the graphic to be. Pull down Edit to Paste.

c.) Scrapbook: when MacWrite is on the same disk with graphics programs such as Excel, MacPaint or MacDraw, you can create the graphic in one of these applications, then...

i.) Select the portion of the graphic which you want to transfer; and Cut(or Copy) it.
ii.) Pull down ⌘ to Scrapbook, and when the scrapbook window opens, Paste your item. Click the close box.

If there are several different portions you would like to paste, repeat steps i. and ii. Each time you paste into the scrapbook, another page is created. This is an advantage over the clipboard, because the clipboard will only accept one portion at a time. Once you have pasted something into the scrapbook, it is safe; you can do anything else you might want to do: use the clipboard, quit for the day, or take a vacation. What you paste in the scrapbook is safely stored on the disk, it will not disappear when the power goes off, like things which are stored in the clipboard.

iii.) When you are ready to paste the Scrapbook-stored graphic into the other document, pull down ⌘ to Scrapbook; and, when the scrapbook appears, page through it, by clicking on the scroll bar below its window, until you find the graphic you want.

iv.) Cut (or Copy) the item from the scrapbook. Click the close box.

v.) Click in the other document where you want your MacWrite graphic to be, and Paste.

After the graphic is in MacWrite you can drag it horizontally, by selecting it, then clicking and dragging its left or right edges. (You can also resize the picture by dragging any of the three little black boxes which appear across the bottom of the picture when it is selected. I've never been particularly pleased with the effect, however.)

25. To find out how much space your document is using: Pull down ⌘ to About MacWrite. The dialog box that appears will tell you who wrote MacWrite, and the version number; then it will say something like "Document occupies 23K on disk with 47K remaining." This is sometimes important to know; because, if you run out of space unexpectedly, you may very well lose your entire document.

Note: Pull down File to Save As... if you do run out of space. When the dialog box appears, type in a new name, then click the "eject" button. Wait for a count of ten until you are well clear of the aircraft, then pull your parachute "D" ring. The parachute should deploy normally. If you were not flying a high performance aircraft, insert a formatted disk with lots of room in the now empty drive slot. Now click the "Save" button. Your "As..." has been saved! (Parachutes notwithstanding, this is no laughing matter; follow these directions if you run out of space!)

Save As... can also be useful if you open an existing document, make some "on screen" changes, and then decide that you want to save both the old document and the new "changed" document:

26. To save a "changed" document without destroying the original: pull down File to Save As... Type in the new name for your changed document. Click the "save" button.
27. **To change a certain word that appears in many places in your document:** Pull down **Search** to **Change**.... When the Change window appears, type the "certain word" you want to change in the top **Find what** rectangle; type what you want to change it to in the **Change to** rectangle. Click the **Find Next** button if you wish to exercise discretion in your changes. Click the **Change All** button if you want to change every single occurrence of that "certain word" in the same way.

28. **To avoid excessive use of the mouse:** Use the keyboard command letters instead, which appear to the right of many of the options in the pull down menus. There are dozens of other keyboard commands as well, which are listed in the "**Hurry up**" chapter of this book, and the Apple literature.
This chapter assumes that you want to learn word processing as rapidly as possible.

1. In order to get started, you'll need a Macintosh computer, and a work disk with Word on it. (If your only copy of Word is a master disk, you need to study the "How to Copy" chapter first, and make a second work disk copy. It is dangerous to use your only copy of an application: what will you do if you damage it?)

   a.) Connect the power cord and mouse to the back of the Mac. If you have an ImageWriter printer, or an external disk drive, or you have access to an AppleTalk system, connect them too. Study the little icons (pictures) above the connectors in the back of the Mac: they will help you to decide which peripheral (accessory) connects where. (If you use it, the AppleTalk connector must be plugged into the port below the printer icon.) Plug your Mac into a surge protector or a grounded (three prong) wall outlet.

   b.) Plug the keyboard into the jack at the base of the front of the Mac. Make sure the keyboard's plugs are right side up when you insert them, or you will bend the keyboard plug contacts.

   c.) Turn it on. The off-on switch is just above the power cord connection in the back. The Mac will "beep" when you turn it on.

   d.) Adjust the brightness. You can feel the knurled brightness knob under the ledge just below the apple logo, on the lower left front side of the computer. Don't turn the brightness any higher than necessary to see comfortably. The lower you keep the brightness, the longer the "picture tube" will last.

2. Hold the Word work disk the way it is in this little picture: 📀 but with your right thumb over the label. Slide it all the way into the disc slot below the screen, until it snaps in and the disc drive starts to click and hum.

   The computer is gathering system information from the disk which is necessary for its operation; this process is sometimes called "booting the system." Any disk that "boots the system" is called a startup disk. A startup disk must have a system file on it. If Mac spits the disk out when you try to insert it, it's because the disk doesn't have a system file, or the disk is defective.

After about 18 seconds, the disk drive will stop and the screen should look like the picture at the top of the next page:
The menu bar containing the words File Edit View Special is across the top of the screen. The desktop, which is the rest of the screen below the menu bar, should be blank except for the disk icon and trash icon on the right side. (If the desktop looks instead like the screen diagram below, no harm has been done. Someone left it that way when they last quit.)

3. There should be a pointer somewhere on the screen. The pointer moves around on the computer desktop when you roll the mouse around on a real tabletop. Move the mouse to position the tip of the pointer in the center of the disk icon and "double-click" (tickaticka) the mouse button without moving the mouse. This opens the disk's directory window; and now your screen should look something like this:

The icons in the directory window above represent the computer files which are recorded on the disk:
a.) The **application icons** represent files which tell the computer how to do something special; in this case, how to be a word processor.

b.) Icons with a "dog-eared" (bent-over) corner represent **documents** which you create with applications like *Word*.

c.) The **system folder** contains the **System** which tells Mac how to be a computer. The system also holds the **fonts** (type faces); and the **desk accessories** which are discussed in the appendix. Double-click the System Folder, and open it up:

![System Folder](image)

d.) The **Finder** creates the desktop and the icons which allow you to find your way around in the Mac.

e.) The **Clipboard File** is an electronic "clipboard" which allows you to "carry" words or pictures from one document to another. The clipboard will only hold one picture at a time.

f.) The **Scrapbook File** is a place you can store words and pictures to use over and over in different documents. The scrapbook will hold many different pictures at once.

g.) The **LaserWriter** and **ImageWriter** are printer "drivers." If you want the computer to print documents on paper, you must have a driver for the printer you want to use. If you will be the first to use a LaserWriter printer after it has been turned on in the morning, you must have a **Laser Prep**. If the printer driver you want is missing, see the "**How to Copy**" chapter.
4. Close the **system folder** window by putting the tip of the pointer in the **close box**, and clicking once, without moving the mouse. (This is called **"clicking on"** the close box.)

   Note: The box in the lower right corner of each window is called a "Size Box". If you put the tip of the pointer in it, and then hold the mouse button down while you "drag" the size box, you can change the shape of the window. Also, you can move the entire window by using this same strategy to "click and drag" the title bar around. This manipulation of windows can be quite useful when you are trying to arrange things so that you can see the contents of more than one window at once. Some windows have a "zoom box" in their upper right corner. If you click on it, it will "toggle" the window between full size, and some other size you may have selected with the "Size Box."

5. Click and hold the mouse button, while you attempt to drag down the word **View** in the menu bar. A list should appear beneath it. The word **View** will not drag, but as you pull the pointer down, each line in the list is highlighted (blackened) in sequence. When the line by **Size** is highlighted, release the mouse button. (This process is called **"pulling down" View to by Size.**) The icons in the directory window should change into a list of the files and applications arranged in order of size, largest first. (The size is measured in "k." You may need to adjust the size box to see it.) If you wish, you can instead rearrange the list alphabetically by pulling down **View** to by **Name**, etc. Try it, then change the window back to by **Icon.**

6. The Apple menu, 🍏, lists desk accessories on your disk, such as the ** Scrapbook** and **Chooser**. Use **Chooser** before you begin, to prepare Mac for the kind of printing he will do when you are ready to print your creation: pull down 🍏 to **Chooser**. When the Chooser window appears...

   a.) If you will be using a LaserWriter or an ImageWriter connected to the AppleTalk network, **click on the "active" button, the printer icon, and the printer's name, if they do not "highlight" when you click on them, then something is wrong.**
b.) If you will be printing on an ImageWriter connected to your Mac only, click the "Inactive" button for AppleTalk; then click on the ImageWriter icon, and click on the icon of the printer port to which the printer is connected. You can tell which port by looking to see where the ImageWriter plugs into Mac's back.

c.) Click the **Chooser's** close box.

---

**Note:** If your **Chooser** doesn't look like the one in the diagram, pull down ⌘ to **About the Finder**. A little card should appear that tells you the finder is number 5.3. (If it’s not, you need to replace the system, finder, and printer driver icons. "How to Copy" tells how to do this.) Put the little card away by clicking on it.
7. Double-click (boot) the Word application icon. When the Word window opens, it will look something like this:

![Word window diagram]

8. The menu bar you see across the top works the same way as the menu bar on the desktop. Pull down File to Save. A dialog box will appear with the insertion point winking in the small rectangle under the words "save current document as:" Type the name of the paper (document) you are going to write, the way you want it listed in the computer's directory (Make the name short, but memorable). The letters will flow out behind the moving insertion point. Click on the "save" button. The dialog box will go away, and the name you have selected will take the place of "untitled" on the title bar. You will not have to fill in the dialog box again for this paper, unless you revise your document, and you want to save both the revision and the old version. To do this, see step 29 of this chapter.

**Warning:** Save what you write. If you don't, you will probably lose all your work. To save, pull down File to Save every ten minutes or every time you get up to get coffee or go to the bathroom. The disk drive will hum for a few seconds while the computer stores your work on the disk. It's cheap insurance!!!

Note: if you want to change the title of a document, do it when you are back on the desktop. Click and drag through the title under the document icon. The mouse pointer will turn into an I-beam. Now type the new name. Click elsewhere on the desktop to make the change permanent.
9. Pull down File to Page Setup...  A dialog box should pop up:

Use facing pages and gutter, if you plan to print on both sides of your pages.

widows are single lines separated from their paragraphs by a page break.

9. Pull down File to Page Setup...  A dialog box should pop up:

```
Orientation:  O Tall  O Wide  means sideways!
Paper Width:  8.5in  Height:  11 in
Margins:  Top:  1 in  Left:  1 in  X Facing Pages
  Bottom:  1 in  Right:  1 in  Gutter:  0.5in

Footnotes at:  OBottom of Pg.  X Widow Control

Next File:  Name the next document in a series here, if you want to
  link documents for indexing, etc.
```

Type the margins you want into the appropriate spaces. If you want footnotes, say where. If you want page numbering, specify what number you want to start with. Click an "X" into widow control. Click the "ok."

Note:  Word has a Short Menus feature to make things less confusing for beginners. But the Short Menus are too short. Click on the Edit menu: if the words, Short Menus, are listed, you will be ok.

10. Get ready to type the title as you want it to appear at the top of your paper:

a.) Pull down Format to Show Ruler. A ruler should pop up.

Click on the Center text icon. The insertion point is winking in the center of the "page," and when you are ready to type your title, it will be centered.

b.) Pull down Font to Helvetica. Pull down Font to 12. Pull down Format to Outline. You have just selected the font, font size, and style for your title. Click the "ok" button.

Note:  The LaserWriter does better work, and prints faster if you use all LaserWriter fonts such as Helvetica, Times, Symbol, Zapf Chancery, Zapf Dingbats, N. Helvetica. If you are using the ImageWriter, use ImageWriter fonts such as Geneva, Chicago, Venice, London, or San Francisco. If
Helvetica, or some other font you may want is not in the Font menu, use whatever is there for now. (To change the fonts in your disk's system see the Font Appendix. To change the fonts in the menu, see step 39.)

c.) Type your paper's title.

Note: Don't be afraid of making mistakes; you can easily change anything in the paper, anytime you want to change it:

i.) To correct single letter errors, put the "I" beam/mouse pointer after the letter you don't like, and click the mouse. (This moves the insertion point.) Backspace over the offending letter, and type in your correction. The backspace key is handy. It allows you to correct little spelling and punctuation errors quickly; but don't use it to wipe out whole words and sentences; instead follow the directions in the next box.

ii.) To correct more than a few letters: select what you don't like by clicking and dragging over it. The portion you have selected should be "highlighted" (have a black background). Then, if you want to destroy it, press backspace. If you only want to move it, pull down Edit to Cut; move the insertion point (move the "I" beam and click) to where you want the deleted word or line to appear; then pull down Edit to Paste. For more selection tricks, see step 20.

Cut and Paste are among the most powerful of the word processor commands. They are what allow you to pick up and move what you've already typed to a new location. (If you want, copy some words you've already typed to another part of your paper, and if you don't want to delete the original, follow the above directions; but pull down Edit to Copy instead of Cut.)

11. Get set to type the first paragraph of your paper. Press return twice (Return is used only to change "paragraphs."). Click the Align text left icon on your ruler.

Now the insertion point is winking on the left, and whatever you type will have an even left hand margin. If you want both margins to be even, click the Justify text icon instead. If you want single spacing between the lines of the paragraph, click the Single space icon.

If you want each paragraph to be indented, click and drag the little first line indent triangle a half inch to the right, or however much you want to indent. A new paragraph, complete with indent, will now be created, whenever you press return. If you want automatic double spacing between paragraphs, click the Paragraph double space icon.
Pull Format down to Outline again (this switches the Outline style back off again). You have just changed the style to what it will be from now on, until you change it again. Begin typing. If you make mistakes, correct them using cut and paste, or backspace as discussed in step 10.

Warning: Do not use return when you get to the end of a line, unless you want a new paragraph. The "wordwrap" feature of the word processor takes care of new lines automatically. If you use return to start a new line, it defeats the word processor, and makes a terrible mess. Use return only to change paragraphs.

Warning: Do not ever use the space bar to indent your paragraphs. This also messes up the word processor. If you want to indent your paragraphs, do it only as described above.

12. To set tabs:

a.) Click on the tab style you want: Left end tab means the left ends of the tabbed words will line up; Tab on decimal means the decimal points will line up, etc.

b.) Click on the ruler wherever you want the tabs to be. Little tab icons should appear on the ruler wherever you have clicked. You can readjust them by dragging them left or right, or if you don't want them at all, just drag the them off of the ruler, and they will disappear. Once the they are set, they work about the same as the tabs on a typewriter. But do not ever use the space bar in place of the tab feature.

13. To temporarily indent a portion of your paper like this, click and drag the small black left and right

---

1 Because the computer remembers the spaces from the spacebar even when you don't want them there any more!
2 Because the computer remembers the "returns" and it will start a new paragraph at the end of that line, even when you later decide to add something on to the line!
3 Because what you see is not quite what you get. Columns that you lined up "perfectly" on the screen, with the spacebar, will no longer be lined-up when you print your document.
indent triangles at either end of the ruler in toward the center however much you like.

Note: The setting of tabs and indents; the selection of text alignment; and line and paragraph spacing; the emphasizing of characters with italics, underlining, etc.; and the selection of fonts and font sizes will affect your paper from the specific location in the paper where you are typing, as you continue to type, forward, until you change it. It will not affect material that has already been typed. If you want to change what has already been typed, you must select (click and drag over) that material before you make the change. Some more selection tricks are described in step 20.

14. Use the scroll bar to move around in your paper. If you want to go back to the beginning, click and drag the little white box up to the top end of the scroll bar. If you want to scroll backwards a line at a time, click on the scroll bar arrow that points up. If you want to scroll backwards a screen full at a time, click on the grey space in between the little white box and the arrow that points up. Of course, dragging the little white box down, or using the downside arrow or grey space, reverses the process.

Click the up arrow to move up a line at a time
Click this grey area to move up a screenful at a time
Drag the little white box wherever you want to go
Click this grey area to move down a screenful at a time
Click the down arrow to move down a line at a time

15. When you are ready to quit do not turn off the computer. If you turn off the computer without going through proper shutdown procedure, you may lose hours of work, or even damage your disk.

a.) When you are ready to quit, pull down File to Quit. If you have not saved already, a dialog box will ask you if you want to save your work. Click "yes" or "no." After the disk drive hums briefly, the desktop will reappear. (If you can already see the desktop, skip this step.)

b.) Once you are back to the desktop, the best way to quit is to pull down Special to Shut Down. This ejects all disks and resets the computer. If you are done, you can turn off the computer; or if you want change startup disks and do something totally different with the computer, you can reboot with a different startup disk.

c.) You can also quit by dragging the disk into the trash. After Mac spits out the disk, turn him off.
d.) If you want to keep the present disk as the startup disk, and keep its directory window on the screen; perhaps while you copy a file from one disk to another, select (click on) the disk icon, and pull down **File** to **Eject**, or type `⌘-E`. Mac will spit out the disk that was selected.

16. When you want to go back to work on the same *Word* document, boot the system, and open the directory window. The *Word* document icon should be there with the name you gave your paper in step 8. Reopen your paper by double-clicking that icon. When your paper opens, use the scroll bar to get to where you want to start typing. To open your "old" *Word 1.0, MacWrite* documents, see step 40.

17. When you are ready to print; **Save** (see step 8); then do the following:

a.) Pull down **File** to **Page Preview**... What you see in **Page Preview** is what you will get, when you print your document:

Click on the Magnifier icon, and the mouse pointer turns into a magnifier. Use it to click on parts of the page that you need to see better.

Click on the Page number icon, and the mouse pointer turns into a page number. Click it on the part of the page where you want the page numbers to appear.

When you click on the Margins icon, the margins, page breaks, page numbers, headers, and footers, can be rearranged.

If you click on the single page, a single page will be displayed. Click on two pages, and two pages will be displayed.

You can turn the preview pages with the scroll bars. When you are done previewing, click the close box. **Save** again if you changed anything.

b.) **Make sure the printer is turned on**:

i.) If you are using a **LaserWriter**, the **On/Off switch** is on the left end, just around the backside corner from the **Power Cord Socket**.
The green light on the front flashes as the LaserWriter warms up; then the yellow light starts flashing to show that the LaserWriter is processing a test print. The LaserWriter should deliver its own test print within two minutes. The yellow light will go out when the LaserWriter delivers the test print. When the green light is on steady, the LaserWriter is ready to print.

ii.) If you are using an ImageWriter, turn it on by depressing the on/off button, which is on the right side of the ImageWriter's top. Three green lights adjacent to the on/off button should come on. If you are using an old ImageWriter, there will be only two green lights. (If you don't get the right number of green lights, or the ImageWriter needs paper, and you don't know what to do, read the "ImageWriter" chapter.)

c.) Pull down File to Print. When the dialog box appears...

i.) ...for the LaserWriter, click the "X" out of the Font Substitution box; then click the "ok" button.

ii.) ...for the ImageWriter click the Best or Faster or Draft button (Best is slow, good-looking, and most copyable; Draft is fast and awful; Faster is in between.); then click the "ok" button. If there are graphics in your Word document, you should click Tall Adjusted. (This degrades the print quality slightly, but greatly improves the picture quality.)

It may take a minute or two, but if all goes well, Mac ought to start printing.

d.) In case of difficulty...

i.) ...if nothing happens, you may have skipped steps 3, 6, or 9: that is, you must have printer driver icon for the printer you intend to use present in your system folder; the AppleTalk "on-off" switch must be set the right way and the appropriate printer and port must have been selected in Chooser; and File must have been pulled down to Page Setup...
ii.) ...if something goes wrong during the ImageWriter printing process, first, turn off the printer by pressing its on/off button; then press \[\text{command-period}\]. (Mac will tell you to stop the printing by pressing \[\text{command-period}\]. only, but this turns out to be much too slow.)

It would probably be possible to type an entire paper using only the preceding instructions; but there will be other things you eventually want to do. Here's a short index of some possibilities, and where to find them:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Topic</th>
<th>Step</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>accidental deletions</td>
<td>19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>adding up numbers in Word</td>
<td>34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>adjusting for graphics distortion</td>
<td>17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>align text</td>
<td>11, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>alphabetizing a column in Word</td>
<td>34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AppleTalk switch</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Art Grabber</td>
<td>27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>backspace key</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>black text background (selecting)</td>
<td>10, 20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>calculating in Word</td>
<td>34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>center text</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>changing certain word throughout</td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>character emphasis</td>
<td>10, 11, 13, 18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>checking spelling</td>
<td>33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chooser</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>click and drag</td>
<td>4, 5, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>clipboard</td>
<td>27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>close box</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>columns, making more than one</td>
<td>35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>contents, table of, automatic typing</td>
<td>37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>copying text</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>corrections, making</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>custom menus, making</td>
<td>39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cut and paste, how to</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>deleting text</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>desktop</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>disasters, what to do</td>
<td>19, 28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>disk full, what to do</td>
<td>28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>duplicating text</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>editing, how to</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>emphasizing text</td>
<td>10, 11, 13, 18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>erasing text</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>error correction</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>facing pages, printing on both sides</td>
<td>9, 16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>font, font size, and style selection</td>
<td>10, 11, 13, 18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>footer, running</td>
<td>32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>footnotes, how to</td>
<td>23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>form letters, how to do them</td>
<td>31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>formatting text</td>
<td>10, 11, 13, 18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>full page display</td>
<td>17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>getting started</td>
<td>1-7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>global change of certain word</td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>glossary, how to use</td>
<td>25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>going back to work, same document</td>
<td>16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>graphics, adjustment of, in Word</td>
<td>27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>graphics transfer into Word</td>
<td>27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gutter, printing on both sides</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>header, running</td>
<td>32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>highlighting (selecting)</td>
<td>6, 10, 20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hyphenation</td>
<td>33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>l-beam/mouse pointer</td>
<td>7, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>icons</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ImageWriter printer</td>
<td>17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>indent, how to</td>
<td>11, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>indexing, how to</td>
<td>38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>insertion point</td>
<td>7, 8, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>justify text</td>
<td>11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>k of space being used for document</td>
<td>5, 28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LaserWriter printer</td>
<td>17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>line numbering</td>
<td>37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>line spacing</td>
<td>11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MacPaint, MacDraw, into Word</td>
<td>27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>magnifier icon</td>
<td>17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>margin setting</td>
<td>9, 17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>menu additions and deletions</td>
<td>39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>menu bar</td>
<td>2, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>merging documents, form letters</td>
<td>31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>moving around in your paper, scroll</td>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>moving graphics into Word</td>
<td>27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>multiple columns, how to</td>
<td>35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>multiple windows, how to</td>
<td>21, 22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>numbering lines and paragraphs</td>
<td>37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>opening multiple windows, how to</td>
<td>22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>page breaks</td>
<td>24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>page numbering, how to</td>
<td>9, 17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>page preview</td>
<td>17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>page setup</td>
<td>9, 17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>paragraph numbering, how to</td>
<td>37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>paragraph spacing</td>
<td>11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>paragraph formatting</td>
<td>11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pasting text, how to</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>print, how to</td>
<td>17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>printer drivers</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>printer selection, chooser</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pulling down, how to</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quitting, how to</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>removing text</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

97 Word
18. To emphasize characters with underlining, Italics, etc:

a.) Select (click and drag over) the words to be emphasized.

b.) Pull down Format to whichever type of emphasis you want.

c.) To toggle the emphasis off again, pull down Format to that same type of emphasis once again.

19. To undo a stupid blunder such as an inadvertent cut or backspace which wipes out a lot of hard work, FREEZE, do not press a single button or key!!! If you press even one key after doing your stupid blunder, you will not be able to undo it. Now, after your head has cooled and the smoke has cleared, pull down Edit to Undo, and all your hard work should magically reappear.

20. Here are some more selection tricks:

a.) To select an entire paper:

First move the "I" beam/mouse pointer to the invisible selection bar. (See the diagram at the beginning of this chapter.) You can tell when you've arrived at the invisible selection bar because the "I" beam turns into a pointer which points up and to the right,  

Now press the "command" (four leaf clover) button and the mouse button at the same time. This is written, [⌘]-click.
b.) To select an odd portion of any length of your paper: Click where you want the selection to begin; and "shift"-click where you want it to end.

c.) To select a paragraph: Double-click in the invisible selection bar next to the paragraph.

d.) To rapidly select many lines: Click and drag down the invisible selection bar.

e.) To rapidly select a sentence: [Ctrl]-click on any word in the sentence.

f.) To select a single column from a body of tabulated material: hold down the Option button while you drag from the upper left to the lower right corners of the column.

21. To view two different parts of your paper simultaneously:

a.) Click and drag the small black rectangle, the window split bar from the top end of the vertical scroll bar down to the scroll bar's middle. Now you have two different screens, each with its own little scroll bar.

b.) Scroll the screens to any two locations in your paper. You can easily move from one to the other by pointing and clicking on wherever you want to be. Yes, you can cut and paste from one screen to the other.

c.) When you are done with the split screens, drag the window split bar back up to the top of the scroll bar.

22. To view two different papers simultaneously: Pull down File to Open; and when the dialog box pops up, double-click on the name of the document you want. (Click the "drive" button if the document is on a disk in another drive. You may have to double-click on folder names to get at the file you want. To close a folder, so you can get at another folder, click on the disk's name.) When the new document you wanted opens, drag the document windows and adjust the size and(or) zoom boxes until you can see both documents to your satisfaction. Yes, you can cut and paste from one screen to the other. To put a document away, save and click its close box.

23. To insert footnotes:

a.) Make sure the insertion point is adjacent to the word where you want the footnote number to appear.

b.) Pull down Document to Footnote.... You will get a dialog box. Click an "X" into the little box next to "auto numbered reference." Click "ok."
c.) Automatically: the screen will split, a footnote number will appear where the insertion point was, and the insertion point will appear in the newly created screen next to the footnote number to be at the bottom of the page. Type your footnote.

Note: Make sure the font and font size match the main body of your text; otherwise your paper will look disorganized. This problem frequently occurs when an author decides to change fonts after a paper is finished, and forgets to change the footnotes, because they are not normally visible.

d.) Move the insertion point back to the original window and continue typing. If you want to get rid of the split screens, drag the window split bar back up to the top of the scroll bar.

24. To see where the page breaks will be: Pull down Document to Repaginate, and wait. The dotted lines ............... that run across the page show where the page breaks will be. To insert your own page breaks, click where you want the page break to be, then press shift-enter.

25. To avoid typing the same long idiot phrase repeatedly:

   a.) Type it once, then select it, and pull down Edit to Copy the idiot phrase.

   b.) Pull down Edit to Glossary....

   c.) In the dialog box which appears, type a short easily remembered code letter to stand for the idiot phrase

   d.) Click the "define" button.

   e.) Click on the close box of the dialog box.

   f.) Now hereafter, whenever your paper requires that long idiot phrase, press 8-[backspace], type the code letters, then press Return; and, lo! The idiot phrase will magically appear!

   g.) If you press 8-[backspace]; type the letters: time, then press Return, the time (say 6:47 PM) will appear! It also works for date (say 3/9/87).

26. To avoid excessive use of the mouse: Use the keyboard command letters instead, which appear to the right of many of the options in the pull down menus. There are dozens of other keyboard commands as well, which are listed in the "Hurry up" chapter of this book, and the Microsoft literature.
27. There are three ways to put drawings or other graphics into Word: you can use the clipboard, Art Grabber+, or the Scrapbook.

a.) **Clipboard:** when Word is on the same disk with graphics programs such as Excel, MacPaint, SuperPaint, or MacDraw:
   
i.) Create the graphic while you are in the graphics program, select it, then pull down **Edit to Copy.** Quit the graphic program.

   ii.) Open your Word document; click where you want the graphic to be, then pull down **Edit to Paste.** Your graphic should appear in your Word document.

b.) **Art Grabber+:** If the graphic already exists on your disk as a MacPaint document, you can use Art Grabber to "grab" it while you are working within Word.
   
i.) Pull down ☹ to Art Grabber+. The word "Grabber+" will appear on the menu bar.

   ii.) Pull down Grabber+ to **Open.** A directory of your MacPaint documents will appear. You may need to open a folder to get at them. Double click on the title of the MacPaint document you want. It will appear in the Art Grabber window.

   iii.) Click and drag the "+" mouse pointer from the upper left corner to the lower right corner of the part of the MacPaint document you want to use. Pull down **Edit to Copy.** Click the close box of the Art Grabber window.

   iv.) Click where you want the graphic to be. Pull down **Edit to Paste.**

c.) **Scrapbook:** when Word is on the same disk with graphics programs such as Excel, MacPaint, SuperPaint, or MacDraw, you can create the graphic in one of these applications, then...
   
i.) Select the portion of the graphic which you want to transfer; and **Cut** (or **Copy**) it.

   ii.) Pull down ☹ to Scrapbook, and when the scrapbook window opens, **Paste** your item. Click the close box.

If there are several different portions you would like to paste, repeat steps i. and ii. Each time you paste into the scrapbook, another page is created. This is an advantage over the clipboard, because the clipboard will only accept one portion at a time. Once you have pasted something into the scrapbook, it is safe; you can do anything else you might want to do: use the clipboard, quit for the day, or take a vacation. What you paste in the scrapbook is safely stored on the
disk, it will not disappear when the power goes off, like things which are stored in the clipboard.

iii.) When you are ready to paste the Scrapbook-stored graphic into Word, pull down to Scrapbook; and, when the scrapbook appears, page through it, by clicking on the scroll bar below its window, until you find your graphic.

iv.) Cut(or Copy) the item from the scrapbook. Click the close box.

v.) Click in Word where you want it pasted, and Paste.

After the graphic is in Word you can position it horizontally by clicking on it, dragging the little black indent triangle on the ruler, then clicking and dragging at the graphic's tiny little black box "handles". You can center it vertically by dragging at the bottom center "handle". You can resize the picture by pressing Shift, then dragging any of the same three little black boxes. When you want to restore it to its original size, drag at a handle without pressing Shift.

28. To find out how much space your document is using: Look in the lower left corner of the document window after you have saved. This is sometimes important to know; because, if you run out of space unexpectedly, you may very well lose your entire document.

Note: If you do run out of space, pull down File to Save As.... When the dialog box appears, type in a new name, then click the "select" button. After the disk ejects, insert a formatted disk with lots of room in the now empty drive slot. Now click the "Save" button. Your document has been saved!

Save As... can also be useful if you open an existing document, make some "on screen" changes, and then decide that you want to save both the old document and the new "changed" document:

29. To save a "changed" document without destroying the original: pull down File to Save As.... Type in the new name for your changed document. Click the "save" button.

30. To change a certain word that appears in many places in your document: Pull down Search to Change.... When the Change window appears, type the "certain word" you want to change in the top Find what rectangle; type what you want to change it to in the Change to rectangle. Click the Find Next button if you wish to exercise discretion in your changes. Click the Change All button if you want to change every single occurrence of that "certain word" in the same way. But be careful! If you inadvertently change a common word occurring throughout your paper, into a blank space, there is no way to undo your mistake.
Merging a Document

One of Word's most powerful features is its ability to "merge" documents. One uses merge when, for example, they need essentially the same letter mailed to many different people, with only the names and address being different from one letter to the next.

31. To merge documents:

   a.) Prepare a merge document, first naming each category of item which will vary from letter to letter; then the list of those items. It must be typed and punctuated in exactly the following manner:

      fullname, title, school, name
      Robert Penny, Principal, Sedro Woolley High School, Bob
      Lawrence W. Brown, Vice Principal, S.W.H.S., Larry
      Peder Mathews, Principal, Cascade Middle School, Peder
      Louie Spane, Principal, Evergreen Elementary, Lou

      When you save your merge document and quit, take careful note of its name. I will call the above example "mergedoc".

   b.) Type your letter, but use the names for the categories of items, instead of the items themselves. And enclose each item in special brackets «like this». You can type this bracket "«" by pressing option-\'. This one "»" is produced by typing option-shift-\'. And one more very important thing: you must tell Word at the beginning of your letter the name of the merge document. Like this:

      «DATA mergedoc»

      Here's my letter:

      Aug 27, 1987
      Kauai

      «DATA mergedoc»
      «fullname»
      «title»
      «school»

      Dear «name»,

      How have things been at good old «school» this summer? They've not been so bad here on Kauai. In fact, they've been so good that I don't think I'll be back this fall. How long have you been «title» there in Sedro Woolley anyway? I sure don't envy you! Have a ball this fall «name».

      In consolation,

   c.) Pull down File to Print Merge...
Headers and Footers

You may have noticed the "running footer," at the bottom of the odd pages of this chapter. You can designate any running footer you want, at the top or the bottom, left or right, odd or even or both pages, first page or not first page.

32. To print a running header (or footer), pull down Document to Header (or Footer). When the Header (or Footer) window opens:

![Header window]

- a.) Type the Header (or Footer) title; press tab
- b.) Click the date (or time) icon if you want; press tab
- c.) Click the page number icon.
- d.) Click the close box. Click "yes" when Mac asks if you want to save?

e.) If you are using facing pages (printing on both sides), you will need odd and even headers. If this is the case, use the order a thru c above for the odd headers (or footers) and reverse the order for even headers:

- a. page number, tab
- b. date (time) tab
- c. header title

33. To use the spelling checker, pull down Document to Spelling....

a.) When the dialog box pops up, click the Start Check button.

b.) When the checker finds a word it doesn't recognize, it will stop. The unknown word will be selected in the document, and displayed after Unknown Word:. You have several options:

i.) If the word is "right" click the "+" button to add it to your dictionary; click the Continue Ck button and continue.

ii.) If the word is wrong, and you want to edit it, click on it, after Unknown Word:. The word will appear in the Change To: box. Edit it in the normal way. Click Change and continue.

iii.) If the word is wrong, and you want a suggestion, click Suggest. If you like the suggestion, click Change and continue.

c.) When you are done, click the close box.
d.) To hyphenate, select the portion of text you would like to hyphenate. Then pull down Document to Hyphenate..., and click the Hyphenate Selection button. When you are done, click the close box.

34. To total or sort a tabulated column of numbers; or alphabetize a tabbed list:

a.) Select the column or list by pressing the Option key as you click and drag from the upper left corner to the lower right corner of the list.

b.) If you want to total the column, pull down Document to Calculate. The total will appear in the lower left corner of the window, where the page number sometimes is. Click where you want to paste the total; pull down Edit to Paste.

   Note: if any numbers in the list are negative, they will be subtracted from the sum of the positive numbers. You can also multiply and divide; but you must use the symbol * (asterisk) to stand for multiply, and / (slash): 45*14 (forty-five times fourteen); 45/14 (forty-five divided by fourteen).

c.) If you want to sort the column of numbers, or alphabetize the list, pull down Document to Sort.

35. To print your document in multiple columns (like a newspaper):

   a.) Pull down Format to Section.... Type the number of columns you want after Number: in the Column box. Click the No Break button in the Section Start box.

   Note: If you want to see what it will look like, before you print, pull down File to Page Preview...(see step 17).

   b.) If you want only part of your document to be in multiple columns, you will have to make that part into a separate section: insert a section divider at the beginning of the part by clicking there, and typing §§-Enter. Insert another section divider at the end of the part, click within the section and proceed as in step a above. Click within the section after the part, and click the No Break button in the Section Start box again.

36. To "record" the formatting of a paragraph (fonts, font size, style, indent, tabs, etc.), so you wont have to keep doing the same formatting over and over:

   a.) Select the first line of the paragraph for which you would like to record the formatting.

   b.) Pull down Format to Define Styles....
c.) When the dialog box pops up, type an appropriate name for your formatting recording (style sheet) in the box after Style:

d.) Click the Define button. Click "ok."

To use your recorded formatting (it's called a style sheet).

a.) Select the paragraph you would like to reformat.

b.) Pull down Format to Styles....

c.) When the dialog box pops up, click on the name of the formatting you want to use. Click "ok."

37. To number lines or paragraphs; or make a table of contents:

   a.) Lines: pull down Format to Section. When the dialog box pops up, click an "X" into the Line Numbering box. If you want to limit the line numbering to a particular section, see step 35.

   b.) Paragraphs: pull down Document to Renumber.... When the dialog box pops up, click the "all" or "only if already numbered" buttons, depending on how you want the paragraphs numbered. (Be careful! If you number every paragraph in your document unintentionally, it can be very hard to undo.) Fill in the Start at: box. Click "ok."

c.) Table of Contents

   i.) Identify the headings within your paper which are to be used for the Table of Contents by typing .C. as hidden text, in front of the heading, and ; as hidden text, after the heading. See step 38 for some hints on how to type hidden text symbols quickly.

   ii.) pull down Edit to Preferences.... Click the "X" out of the Show Hidden Text box; click "ok." Pull down Document to Table of Contents...; click the .C. Paragraphs button; click the Start button. The headings will be collected with their page numbers as a table of contents at the front of your document. When, in the course of editing, the page numbers change, your table of contents can be updated, just by doing step ii above again.

38. To make an index:

   a.) Type the symbol .I. Select it. Pull down Format to Character.... When the dialog box pops up, click an "X" into the Hidden box under Character Formats. Click "ok."
b.) Pull down Edit to Glossary. When the dialog box pops up, type in. Click the Define button. Click the close box.

c.) Repeat steps a and b for the symbol ;. Type en in the glossary dialog box. Pull down File to Save As.... When the dialog box pops up, click the Save button. Click "Yes" to replace the Standard Glossary.

d.) Use the Glossary and the above codes, in and en (see step 25) to paste the hidden text symbol .I. before and the hidden text symbol ; after each word you want to have appear in the index.

e.) Pull down Edit to Preferences. Click the "X" out of the Show Hidden Text box. Click "ok."

f.) Pull down Document to Index.... Click the Start button. The index will be listed at the end of your paper.

39. To change the fonts listed when you pull down Font, or otherwise build custom pull down menus:

a.) If you want to remove listed fonts, press [command]-Option-[command-option-minus]. The mouse pointer will turn into a "-" sign. Use it to pull down Font to the font you would like to remove.

b.) If you want to add fonts, press [command]-Option-[command-option-plus]. The mouse pointer will turn into a "+" sign. Use it to pull down Format to Character. Click on the font you want to add to the pull down font list.

40. If you want to edit your old Word 1.0 or MacWrite documents in new Word 3.0 you must first boot the Word application icon, then pull down File to Open. There will be a pause of 20 seconds or so, while Word converts the old document. When you Save it will save as a new document, which you will have to name. If you want to wipe out the old document, give the new one the same name.
If you're reading this chapter, you may be wanting to lay out and print a multi-column newsletter which contains both writing and graphics. Here's how to do it.

1. In order to get started, you'll need a Macintosh computer, and a work disk with ReadySetGo 3.0 (RSG) on it. (If your only copy of RSG is a master disk, you need to study the "How to Copy" chapter first, and make a second work disk copy. It is dangerous to use your only copy of an application: what will you do if you damage it?) To properly follow these instructions, your RSG work disk must also contain at least one graphic from MacPaint, MacDraw, or Excel; and at least one, 2 or 3 page written document from MacWrite or Word. The process of adding these documents to your disk is explained in "How to Copy."

a.) Connect the power cord and mouse to the back of the Mac. If you have an ImageWriter printer, or an external disk drive, or you have access to an AppleTalk system, connect them too. Study the little icons (pictures) above the connectors in the back of the Mac: they will help you to decide which peripheral (accessory) connects where. (If you use it, the AppleTalk connector must be plugged into the port below the printer icon.) Plug your Mac into a surge protector or a grounded (three prong) wall outlet.

b.) Plug the keyboard into the jack at the base of the front of the Mac. Make sure the keyboard's plugs are right side up when you insert them, or you will bend the keyboard plug contacts.

c.) Turn it on. The off-on switch is just above the power cord connection in the back. The Mac will "beep" when you turn it on.

d.) Adjust the brightness. You can feel the knurled brightness knob under the ledge just below the apple logo, on the lower left front side of the computer. Don't turn the brightness any higher than necessary to see comfortably. The lower you keep the brightness, the longer the "picture tube" will last.

2. Hold the RSG work disk the way it is in this little picture: □ but with your right thumb over the label. Slide it all the way into the disc slot below the screen, until it snaps in and the disc drive starts to click and hum.

The computer is gathering system information from the disk which is necessary for its operation; this process is sometimes called "booting the system." Any disk that "boots the system" is called a startup disk. A startup disk must have a system file on it. If Mac spits the disk out when you try to insert it, it's because the disk doesn't have a system file, or the disk is defective.

After about 18 seconds, the disk drive will stop and the screen should look like the picture at the top of the next page:
The menu bar containing the words File Edit View Special is across the top of the screen. The desktop, which is the rest of the screen below the menu bar, should be blank except for the disk icon and trash icon on the right side. (If the desktop looks instead like the screen diagram below, no harm has been done. Someone left it that way when they last quit.)

3. There should be a pointer on the screen. The pointer moves around on the computer desktop when you roll the mouse around on a real table top. Move the mouse to position the tip of the pointer in the center of the disk icon and "double-click" (tickaticka) the mouse button without moving the mouse. This opens the disk's directory window, and now your screen should look something like this:

The icons in the directory window represent the computer files which are recorded on the disk:

ReadySetGo 110
a.) The **application icons** represent files which tell the computer how to do something special; in this case, how to be a page processor.

b.) Icons with a "dog-eared" (bent-over) corner represent **documents** which you create with applications like RSG.

c.) The **System Folder** contains the **System** which tells Mac how to be a computer. The System also holds the **fonts** (typefaces); and the **desk accessories** which are discussed in the appendix. Double-click the System Folder, and open it up:

d.) The **Finder** creates the desktop and the icons which allow you to find your way around in the Mac.

e.) The **Clipboard File** is an electronic "clipboard" which allows you to "carry" words or pictures from one document to another. The clipboard will only hold one picture at a time.

f.) The **Scrapbook File** is a place you can store words and pictures to use over and over in different documents. The scrapbook will hold many different items at once.

g.) The **LaserWriter** and **ImageWriter** are printer "drivers." If you want the computer to print documents on paper, you must have a driver for the printer you want to use. If you will be the first to use a LaserWriter printer after it has been turned on in the morning, you will also need a **Laser Prep**. If the printer driver you want is missing, you need to study "How to Copy."
4. Close the **system folder** window by putting the tip of the pointer in the **close box**, and clicking once, without moving the mouse. (This is called "clicking on" the close box.)

Note: The box in the lower right corner of each window is called a "Size Box" If you put the tip of the pointer in it, and then hold the mouse button down while you "drag" the size box, you can change the shape of the window. Also, you can move the entire window by using this same strategy to "click and drag" the title bar around. This manipulation of windows can be quite useful when you are trying to arrange things so that you can see the contents of more than one window at once. Some windows have a "zoom" box in their upper right corner. If you click on it, it will "toggle" the window between full size, and some other size you may have selected with the "Size Box."

![Image of window management controls](image)

5. Click and hold the mouse button, while you attempt to drag down the word **View** in the menu bar. A list should appear beneath it. The word **View** will not drag, but as you pull the pointer down, each line in the list is highlighted (blackened) in sequence. When the line **by Size** is highlighted, release the mouse button. (This process is called "pulling down" **View to by Size**.) The icons in the directory window should change into a list of the files and applications arranged in order of size, largest first. (The size is measured in "k." You may need to adjust the size box to see it.) If you wish, you can instead rearrange the list alphabetically by pulling down **View to by Name**, etc. Try it, then change the window back to **by Icon**.

6. The Apple menu, 🌐, lists desk accessories on your disk, such as the **Scrapbook** and **Chooser**. Use **Chooser** before you begin, to prepare Mac for the kind of printing he will do when you are ready to print your creation: pull down 🌐 to **Chooser**. When the Chooser window appears....

   a.) If you will be using a LaserWriter or an ImageWriter connected to the AppleTalk network, click on the "active" button, the printer icon, and the printer's name, if they do not "highlight" when you click on them, then something is wrong.
b.) If you will be printing on an ImageWriter connected to your Mac only, click the "Inactive" button for AppleTalk; then click on the ImageWriter icon, and click on the icon of the printer port to which the printer is connected. You can tell which port by looking to see where the ImageWriter plugs into Mac's back.

c.) Click the Chooser's close box.

Note: If your Chooser doesn't look like the one in the diagram, pull down ⌘ to About the Finder. A little card should appear that tells you the finder is number 5.3. (If it's not, you need to replace the system, finder, and printer driver icons. "How to Copy" tells how to do this.) Put the little card away by clicking on it.
7. Double-click (boot) the RSG application icon. When the RSG window opens, it should look something like this:

The Page scroll boxes allow you to flip from one page to the next in your newsletter; when you are working on several pages at once, you can click on the page number you want. The Line Patterns allow you to choose the line pattern for your divider lines (called "rules" in the newspaper business). Only the upper-left corner of your future newsletter is visible right now; you will use the Scroll bars to move around on it, while you work on different portions of the page. The Toolboxes are used for a number of different purposes, to be discussed as we go along:

"Pointer" selects, moves, resizes
"Cropper" selects picture blocks and slides pictures within them
"Text Block" creates text blocks
"Picture Block" creates picture blocks
"Lines" draws lines
"I-beam" edits text
"Linker" links text blocks
"Rectangle" draws boxes
"Round-cornered rectangle"
"Oval" draws ovals

8. The Command menu you see across the top works the same way as the menu bar on the desk top. Pull down File to Save. A dialog box will appear with the insertion point winking in the small rectangle under the words "save current document as:" Type the name of the document you are going to "page-process," the way you want it listed in the computer's directory (Make the name short, but memorable). The letters will flow out behind the moving insertion point. Click on the "save" button. The dialog box will go away, and the name you have selected will take the place of "untitled" on the title bar. You will not have to fill in the dialog box again, unless you change your drawing's name.
Warning: Save what you write. If you don't, you will probably lose all your work. To save, pull down File to Save every ten minutes or every time you get up to get coffee or go to the bathroom. The disk drive will hum for a few seconds while the computer stores your work on the disk. It's cheap insurance!!!

Note: if you want to change the title of a document, do it when you are back on the desktop. Click and drag through the title under the document icon. The mouse pointer will turn into an I-beam. Now type the new name. Click elsewhere on the desktop to make the change permanent.

9. Pull down File to Page Setup... A dialog box titled LaserWriter or ImageWriter, depending upon which printer you selected with the Chooser, should appear. If you don't want to change anything, click the "ok" button, and the dialog box should go away.

Note: If you are using the ImageWriter, and you include graphics in your RSG document, you should click Tall Adjusted in the Page Setup...dialog box. (This degrades the print quality slightly, but greatly improves the picture quality.)

10. Pull down Special to Size to Fit. Now you should be able to see the whole page. (You can lay out a whole page in Size to Fit; and enter text in Actual Size.) Pull down Special to Design Grids. A dialog box labeled Design Grids will pop up. Click on the 8 x 8 button. Click the "ok" button. A grid should appear like the one in the window on the next page:

Note: The "grid" is the collection of small dotted line rectangles, surrounded by a larger dotted line rectangle. This larger dotted line rectangle indicates the "live area" of the printer you selected in Chooser. Objects place outside of this "live area" dotted line boundary will not print even though they may be visible on the screen.

11. Pictures and text you place on the page should automatically snap to the nearest grid lines. Position the picture block first:
a.) Click on the **Picture Block** tool: 
Use it to create a picture block by clicking and dragging from the upper-left to the lower-right corners of where you want the picture placed on the page. The picture block should look like the one in the grid on the left below. If it is the wrong shape, press the Backspace key and the block will disappear. Then try again.

![Grid with picture block](image1)

b.) Now click on the **Cropper** tool: 
Use it to click on the picture block. This prepares your picture block to receive an imported graphic. A picture block prepared to receive a graphic looks like the one in the grid on the above right.

![Grid with cropper](image2)

12. **Pull down File to Get Picture.**

a.) When the dialog box pops up, double click on the name of the graphic document which contains your picture. The document should be listed in the dialog box's list window. (You may have to open a folder in the dialog box list window to get at the document. To do this, double click on the name of the folder which contains the graphic. If you have an external drive, and the graphic is on a disk in the other drive, click the "drive" button. If the graphic document isn't there, you will have to put one on your disk, as I said in step 1.)

b.) The graphic should appear in the picture block. Use the cropper tool to slide the graphic around in the picture block until it is positioned the way you want it:

![Grid with graphic](image3)

Note: If possible use graphics created with *MacDraw*. They look much better when printed on the LaserWriter. If Get Picture does not work for *MacDraw*, see step 19 for other strategies.
13. Click on the **Text Block** tool, \[ \text{T} \] and draw four columns (text blocks) by dragging the tool upper left to lower right, as you did with the Picture Block tool. The page on the lower left, has three of the four columns drawn. Click on the **Linker tool**, \[ 3 \] and link all four text columns by clicking once inside of each column. Click on the last column a second time to complete the text chain.

14. Click on the **I-beam tool**, \[ \text{I} \] then use it to click on the first text block. Pull down **File to Get Text**.

a.) When the dialog box pops up, double click on the name of the document *(Word or MacWrite)* which contains your text. The document should be listed in the dialog box's list window. (You may have to open a folder in the dialog box list window to get at the document. To do this, double click on the name of the folder which contains the text. If you have an external drive, and the text is on a disk in the other drive, click the "drive" button. If there is no text document, you will have to put one on your disk, as I said in step 1.)

b.) The text should flow into the text blocks in the order in which they were linked. Your newsletter should look like the page above right.

Note: you can also "word-process" text on the spot in *RSG* using normal word-processing procedures discussed in the *MacWrite* and *Word* chapters: you can Cut and Paste; select fonts, font sizes, and styles; move sentences and paragraphs around; etc. the same as in *MacWrite* or *Word*.

Note: you should always use LaserWriter fonts in *RSG*. If you are word processing within *RSG* select LaserWriter fonts in the first place. If you import your text, select it all, and change it to LaserWriter fonts before you print. Some of the LaserWriter fonts are *Helvetica*, *Times*, *Symbol*, *N.Helvetica*, *Zapf Dingbats*, and *Zapf Chancery*. *ImageWriter* fonts will look
"stretched out" when you print it in the LaserWriter; and it will make the LaserWriter take a very long time to print. Even if you are going to print the first draft of your newsletter on an ImageWriter, you should still use the LaserWriter fonts!!

c.) Select all of the text by clicking in a text block with the \text{J-beam} then pull down \text{Edit} to Select All. While the text is selected, you can pull down the \text{Font, Style, and Format} menus to alter the text in any manner you see fit. Of course you can click and drag over a smaller portion of the text, and bring about these same changes in only a small selected area.

d.) See step 19 for other text importing methods.

15. When you are ready to quit \textbf{DO NOT} turn off the computer. \textbf{If you turn off the computer without going through proper shutdown procedure, you may lose hours of work, or even damage your disk.}

a.) When you are ready to quit, pull down \text{File} to \text{Quit}. If you have not saved already, a dialog box will ask you if you want to save your work. Click "yes" or "no." After the disk drive hums briefly, the desktop will reappear. (If you can already see the desktop, skip this step.)

b.) Once you are back to the desktop, the best way to quit is to pull down \text{Special} to \text{Shut Down}. This ejects all disks and \text{resets} the computer. If you are done, you can turn off the computer; or if you want change startup disks and do something totally different with the computer, you can reboot with a different startup disk.

c.) You can also quit by dragging the disk into the trash. After Mac spits out the disk, turn him off.

d.) If you want to keep the present disk as the startup disk, and keep its directory window on the screen; perhaps while you copy a file from one disk to another, select (click on) the disk icon, and pull down \text{File} to \text{Eject}, or type \text{⌘}-\text{E}. Mac will spit out the disk that was selected.

16. When you want to go back to work on the same RSG document, boot the system, and open the directory window. The \textit{RSG document} icon should be there there with the name you gave your paper in step 8. Reopen it by double-clicking on its icon.

17. When you are ready to print; \textit{Save}; then do the following:

a.) \textbf{Make sure the printer is turned on:}

   i.) \textbf{If you are using a LaserWriter}, the \textit{On/Off switch} is on the left end, just around the backside corner from the \textit{Power Cord Socket};
The green light on the front flashes as the LaserWriter warms up; then the yellow light starts flashing to show that the LaserWriter is processing a test print. The LaserWriter should deliver its own test print within two minutes. The yellow light will go out when the LaserWriter delivers the test print. When the green light is on steady, the LaserWriter is ready to print.

ii.) If you are using an ImageWriter, turn it on by depressing the on/off button, which is on the right side of the ImageWriter's top. Three green lights adjacent to the on/off button should come on. If you are using an old ImageWriter, there will be only two green lights. (If you don't get the right number of green lights, or the ImageWriter needs paper, and you don't know what to do, read the "ImageWriter" chapter.)

b.) Pull down File to Print. When the dialog box appears...

i.) ...for the LaserWriter, click the "ok" button.

ii.) ...for the ImageWriter click the Best or Faster or Draft button (Best is slow, good-looking, and most copyable; Draft is fast and awful; Faster is in between.); then click the "ok" button.

It may take a minute or two, but if all goes well, Mac ought to start printing.

c.) In case of difficulty...

i.) ...if nothing happens, you may have skipped steps 3, 6, or 9: that is, you must have printer driver icon for the printer you intend to use present in your system folder; the AppleTalk "on-off" switch must be set the right way and the appropriate printer and port must have been selected in Chooser; and File must have been pulled down to Page Setup...

ii.) ...if something goes wrong during the ImageWriter printing process, first, turn off the printer by pressing its on/off button; then press ⌘-.
(command-period). (Mac will tell you to stop the printing by pressing \[\text{command-period}\], only, but this turns out to be much too slow.)

18. To avoid excessive use of the mouse: Use the keyboard command letters instead, which appear to the right of many of the options in the pull down menus. There are dozens of other keyboard commands as well, which are listed in the "Hurry up" chapter of this book, and the RSG literature.

19. There are three other ways to move text or graphics into RSG: you can use the clipboard, Art Grabber+, or the Scrapbook.

   a.) Clipboard: when RSG is on the same disk with graphics or word processing applications such as Excel, MacWrite, or MacDraw:

      i.) Create the graphic or text in that application select it, then pull down Edit to Copy. Quit that application.

      ii.) If you are moving text, open your RSG document; click with the 1-beam in the text block where you want the text to be, then pull down Edit to Paste. The text should appear.

      iii.) If you are moving graphics, open your RSG document; click with the Cropper in the picture block where you want the picture to be, then pull down Edit to Paste. The graphic should appear.

   b.) Art Grabber+: If the graphic already exists on your disk as a MacPaint document, you can use Art Grabber to "grab" it while you are working within RSG.

      i.) Pull down to Art Grabber+. The word "Grabber+" will appear on the menu bar.

      ii.) Pull down Grabber+ to Open. A directory of your MacPaint documents will appear. You may need to open a folder to get at them. Double click on the title of the MacPaint document you want. It will appear in the Art Grabber window.

      iii.) Click and drag the "+" mouse pointer from the upper left corner to the lower right corner of the part of the MacPaint document you want to use. Pull down Edit to Copy. Click the close box of the Art Grabber window.

      iv.) Click with the Cropper in the picture block where you want the picture to be, then pull down Edit to Paste. The graphic should appear.
c.) **Scrapbook**: when RSG is on the same disk with applications such as Excel, MacWrite or MacDraw, you can create the graphics or text in one of these applications, then...

i.) Select the portion of the graphic or text which you want to transfer; and **Cut** (or **Copy**) it.

ii.) Pull down ⌘ to **Scrapbook**, and when the scrapbook window opens, **Paste** your item. Click the close box.

If there are several different portions you would like to paste, repeat steps i. and ii. Each time you paste into the scrapbook, another page is created. This is an advantage over the clipboard, because the clipboard will only accept one portion at a time. Once you have pasted something into the scrapbook, it is safe; you can do anything else you might want to do: use the clipboard, quit for the day, or take a vacation. What you paste in the scrapbook is safely stored on the disk, it will not disappear when the power goes off, like things which are stored in the clipboard.

iii.) When you are working within RSG, and you are ready to paste the **Scrapbook**-stored item into RSG, pull down ⌘ to **Scrapbook**; and, when the scrapbook appears, page through it, by clicking on the scroll bar below its window, until you find your item.

iv.) **Cut** (or **Copy**) the item from the scrapbook. Click its close box.

v.) If you are moving text; click with the **I-beam** in the text block where you want the text to be, then pull down **Edit** to **Paste**. The text should appear.

vi.) If you are moving graphics; click with the **Cropper** in the picture block where you want the picture to be, then pull down **Edit** to **Paste**. The graphic should appear.

20. **To save a “changed” document without destroying the original**: pull down **File** to **Save As**... Type in the new name for your changed document. Click the “save” button.

21. **To create additional pages**...

   a.) Pull down **Special** to **Insert Page(s)**. Type the number of pages you want. Click the “ok” button.

   b.) Add **Design Grids** and at least one **Text block** to your new page(s) as you did on page one.
22. To link the new Text block with the others...

   a.) Click page icon number one in the page scroll box, to go back to page one.

   b.) Click the last Text block on page one with the Linker tool ; scroll to one of your new pages; click one of the new text blocks twice with the Linker, and any excess text which may not have been displayed on page one will flow into the new text block. (If there is still undisplayed text, there will be an overflow indicator: " ] " in the lower right hand corner of the text block.)

   Note: If you want to unlink a text block, hold down the Option key while you click the block with the Linker. If you want to eliminate a text block, but preserve the text, select the block with the Pointer, and press the Backspace key. If you want to wipe out both the text block and its text, select it with the Pointer, and pull down Edit to Cut.

23. To change the shape of a text or picture block ...

   a.) Click on the Pointer tool, and use it to click on a text or picture block. "Handles" (tiny black squares) will appear that let you resize the block in any direction.

   b.) Pull down Special to Turn Snap to Off. Click and drag the handles in whatever direction you want, to reshape the block in any direction.

   If it is a text block, the text will reflow to fit the new shape.

   If it is a picture block, and you cover up an adjacent column, the text will reflow around the picture block automatically. Click and drag the whole picture to another location. Again, the text will reflow to fit the new contours. You can do this with other objects (like another Text block !!) by pulling down Special to Specifications, and selecting Run Around from the dialog box which pops up.

   Note: Run Around is important. If you don't use it, and the the overlapping object is not a picture block, it will over print the underlying text.

   Note: Reshaping a picture block does not stretch or compress the picture inside the block. If you want to do this, pull down Special to Specifications, and change the percent values of Scale Across and Scale Down in the dialog box that pops up.

24. To turn the hyphenation off for a selected word. Selected the word by clicking and dragging over it; and pull down Text to Hyphenation Off.
25. **You can open more than one RSG document** by pulling down File to **New** (or **Open** if another RSG document already exists.) You will need to resize the windows so that you can see both documents by clicking and dragging on the size boxes and title bars. This is useful if you want to **Cut** and **Paste** between RSG documents.

26. **To create white type on a black background...**

   a.) Create a text block of large outline style type.

   b.) Click on the **Rectangle** tool ; and use it to drag (upper left to lower right) a rectangle somewhat larger than the text block.

   c.) Click on the **Pointer** and select the new rectangle. Pull down **Fill** to black or some other dark pattern. The rectangle should fill with the pattern you selected.

   d.) Select the text block with the pointer, and drag it over the filled rectangle.

   e.) Select the filled rectangle again; then pull down **Special** to Send Behind.

27. **To draw lines (rules)...**

   a.) Click on the **Line** tool .

   b.) Click on the **Line pattern** you want. If you want it to be some other "color" than black, pull down **Fill** to the "color" you want to substitute.

   c.) Click and drag from where you want the beginning to where you want the end. If you don't like the **Line pattern** or the "color. Select the line with the **Pointer**; then click on a different pattern; or pull down **Fill** to a different "color."

   Note: the "Thin" **Line Pattern** produces a hairline only on the LaserWriter.

   Note: be conservative in your use of lines; they can make your newsletter look "junky" and they slow down the LaserWriter.
With *Excel* you can do **spreadsheet work** with many different mathematically related numbers, simultaneously, rapidly, and accurately; as you might, in doing accounting or budgeting or a grade book; and (or)

You can make **good-looking graphs or charts** from sets of data; and (or)

You can create a **database** (computerized card file) which will allow you to quickly pull single selected facts out of a big pile of information, or allow you to quickly rearrange and present that information in a more convenient format.

1. In order to get started, you'll need a Macintosh computer, and a work disk with *Excel* on it. (If your only copy of *Excel* is a master disk, you need to study the "**How to Copy**" chapter first, and make a second work disk copy. It is dangerous to use your only copy of an application; what will you do if you damage it?)

   a.) Connect the power cord and mouse to the back of the Mac. If you have an ImageWriter printer, or an external disk drive, or you have access to an AppleTalk system, connect them too. Study the little icons (pictures) above the connectors in the back of the Mac: they will help you to decide which peripheral (accessory) connects where. (If you use it, the AppleTalk connector **must** be plugged into the port below the printer icon.) Plug your Mac into a surge protector or a grounded (three prong) wall outlet.

   b.) Plug the keyboard into the jack at the base of the front of the Mac. Make sure the keyboard's plugs are right side up when you insert them, or you will bend the keyboard plug contacts.

   c.) Turn it on. The off-on switch is just above the power cord connection in the back. The Mac will "beep" when you turn it on.

   d.) Adjust the brightness. You can feel the knurled brightness knob under the ledge just below the apple logo, on the lower left front side of the computer. Don't turn the brightness any higher than necessary to see comfortably. The lower you keep the brightness, the longer the "picture tube" will last.

2. Find a work disk with *Excel* on it. Hold the disk the way it is in this little picture: 🕌 but with your right thumb over the label. Slide it all the way into the disc slot below the screen, until it snaps in and the disc drive starts to click and hum.

   The computer is gathering system information from the disk which is necessary for its operation; this process is sometimes called "**booting the system.**" A disk that "boots the system" is called the **startup disk.** A startup disk must have a system file on it. If Mac spits the disk out when you try to insert it, it's because the disk doesn't have a system file, or the disk is defective.)
After about 18 seconds, the disk drive will stop and the screen will look like this:

The menu bar containing the words *File Edit View Special* is across the top of the screen. The desktop, which is the rest of the screen below the menu bar, should be blank except for the disk icon and trash icon on the right side. (If the desktop looks instead like the screen diagram below, no harm has been done. Someone left it that way when they last quit.)

3. There should be a pointer ($) somewhere on the screen, which moves around on the computer desktop when you roll the mouse around on a real tabletop. Move the mouse to position the tip of the pointer in the center of the disk icon and "double-click" (tickaticka) the mouse button without moving the mouse. This opens the disk's directory window; and now your screen should look something like the picture below:
The icons in the directory window above represent the computer files which are recorded on the disk:

a.) The application icons represent files which tell the computer how to do something special; in this case, how to be a spreadsheet/database.

b.) Icons with a "dog-eared" (bent-over) corner represent documents which you create with applications like Excel:
   i. The worksheet icon can be either a saved spreadsheet or saved database.
   ii. The chart icon is a saved graph or chart. It must be accompanied by the icon for the worksheet which was used to create it.
   iii. The macro icon is a stored "macro." Macros will be explained in step 26. This particular icon, COMMANDS, comes with Excel; don't trash it.

c.) The system folder contains the System which tells Mac how to be a computer. The system also holds the fonts (typefaces); and the desk accessories which are discussed in the appendix. Double-click the System Folder, and open it up:

d.) The Finder creates the desktop and the icons which allow you to find your way around in the Mac.

e.) The Clipboard File is a "clipboard" which allows you to carry graphs or data from one document to another. The clipboard will only hold one piece of information at a time.

f.) The Scrapbook File is a place you can store graphs and data to use over and over in different documents. The scrapbook will hold many different items at once.

g.) The LaserWriter and ImageWriter are printer "drivers." If you want the computer to print documents on paper, you must have a driver for the printer you
want to use. If you will be the first to use a LaserWriter printer after it has been turned on in the morning, you will also need a Laser Prep. If the printer driver you want is missing, you need to study "How to Copy."

4. Close the system folder window by putting the tip of the pointer in the close box, and clicking once, without moving the mouse. (This is called "clicking on" the close box.)

Note: The box in the lower right corner of each window is called a "Size Box." If you put the tip of the pointer in it, and then hold the mouse button down while you "drag" the size box, you can change the shape of the window. Also, you can move the entire window by using this same strategy to "click and drag" the title bar around. This manipulation of windows can be quite useful when you are trying to arrange things so that you can see the contents of more than one window at once. Some windows have a "zoom" box in the their upper right corner. If you click on it, it will "toggle" the window between full size, and some other size you may have selected with the "Size Box."

5. Click and hold the mouse button, while you attempt to drag down the word View in the menu bar. A list should appear beneath it. The word View will not drag, but as you pull the pointer down, each line in the list is highlighted (blackened) in sequence. When the line by Size is highlighted, release the mouse button. (This process is called "pulling down" View to by Size.) The icons in the directory window should change into a list of the files and applications arranged in order of size, largest first. (The sizes are measured in "k." You may have to adjust the size box to see the sizes.) If you wish, you can instead rearrange the list alphabetically by pulling down View to by Name, etc. Try it, then change the window back to by Icon.

6. The Apple menu, , lists desk accessories on your disk, such as the Scrapbook and Chooser. Use Chooser before you begin, to prepare Mac for the kind of printing he will do when you are ready to print your creation: pull down to Chooser. When the Chooser window appears....

a.) If you will be using a LaserWriter or an ImageWriter connected to the AppleTalk network, click on the "active" button, the printer icon, and the printer's name, if they do not "highlight" when you click on them, then something is wrong.
3. Name
3. Button
Chooser
Select a LaserWriter:
LaserWriter Plus
This must be both present and "highlighted" (blacked-out) or the LaserWriter won't print.
User Name:
Bill Flint
AppleTalk
Active
Inactive

If the printer icon isn't there, you need to go back to step 3g. If the printer's name isn't there, or if it refuses to highlight (white print on black) when you click on it, then the printer is not turned on; or the printer and/or your Mac are not connected to the AppleTalk network.

b.) If you will be printing on an ImageWriter connected to your Mac only, click the "Inactive" button for AppleTalk; then click on the ImageWriter icon, and click on the icon of the printer port to which the printer is connected. You can tell which port by looking to see where the ImageWriter plugs into Mac's back.

c.) Click the Chooser's close box.

Note: If your Chooser doesn't look like the one in the diagram, pull down ♦ to About the Finder. A little card should appear that tells you the finder is number 5.3. (If it's not, you need to replace the system, finder, and printer driver icons. "How to Copy" tells how to do this.) Put the little card away by clicking on it.
7. Double-click (boot) the *Excel* application icon. When the *Excel* window opens, it should look something like this:

![Excel application window diagram]

8. The *menu bar* you see across the top works the same way as the menu bar on the desk top: Pull down *File* to *Save*. A *dialog box* will appear with the highlighted words *Worksheet1* in the black rectangle under the words *Save Worksheet As*: Type the name you want this worksheet to have. The letters will flow out behind the moving insertion point. Click on the *Save* button. The dialog box will go away, and the name you have selected will take the place of "Worksheet 1" on the *title bar*. You will not have to fill in the dialog box again, unless you change your worksheet's name.

```
Warning: Save your work. If you don't, you will probably lose all of it. To save, pull down *File* to *Save* every ten minutes or every time you get up to get coffee or go to the bathroom. The disk drive will hum for a few seconds while the computer stores your work on the disk. It's cheap insurance!!!
```

Note: if you want to change the title of a document, do it when you are back on the desktop. Click and drag through the title under the document icon. The mouse pointer will turn into an I-beam. Now type the new name. Click elsewhere on the desktop to make the change permanent.

9. Pull down *File* to *Page Setup*... . A dialog box titled *LaserWriter* or *ImageWriter*, depending upon which printer you selected with the *Chooser*, should appear. You can get rid of the row and column headings, and grid lines when you print by clicking the little boxed "X's" away. You can type in a header for your worksheet at the same time if you want. If you don't want to change anything, click the "ok" button, and the dialog box should go away.

```
Note: If you will be using a LaserWriter, you should use LaserWriter fonts in Excel. Some of the LaserWriter fonts are Helvetica, Times, Symbol, and N.Helvetica. ImageWriter fonts such as Geneva are fine for the ImageWriter but they will make the LaserWriter take a very long time to print. To change fonts, pull down *Options* to *Font*... If you can't get Font to highlight, press the Enter button and try again. When the dialog box appears, select a different font and font size. If the right choices aren't there, it tells how to put more fonts in the system in the "Font Appendix."
```

Excel 130
10. The worksheet is divided into little boxes called cells. A horizontal line of cells is called a row; a vertical line of cells is called a column. The column labels are across the top of the worksheet, and the row numbers are along the left hand margin. In order to type numbers or text into a cell, it must be selected (by pointing with the mouse and clicking, or by some other method to be discussed later). When a cell is selected, it has a heavy black border, and it is called the active cell; the column label and row number of the active cell are specified in the reference box. Click and drag the size box until your spreadsheet is a little over 8 rows high, and 5 columns wide, as pictured between steps 7 and 8.

Here’s how to use Excel for spreadsheeting:

11. The best way to learn spreadsheeting is to make a spreadsheet. You can use the Excel worksheet to do this. Let’s set up a simple spreadsheet for calculating the yearly income of a hypothetical family:

First we’ll name the columns:

a.) If cell A1 hasn’t been selected already, click on it; then type family member. (If column A isn’t wide enough for the words, you can make it wider by clicking and dragging just next to the little line between the column labels.)

b.) Move to the second cell by pressing Tab; type dad.

c.) Move to the third cell and type mom. d.) Continue by typing teenager in the next cell, and kid in the fifth. (If you want to backtrack to the left, press Shift and Tab at the same time: Shift-Tab. If part of your work slips out of sight, pull it back with the scroll bars.)

Now we’ll name the rows:

a.) Click on A2, and type working income/month.

b.) Move one cell down, by pressing Return, and type months paid/year.

c.) Move to the next cell down, which is A4, the fourth from the top, by pressing Return again; this time type total working income.

d.) Use Return as needed, and continue by typing other income sources in the fifth cell from the top; amount/year in the sixth; total income/member in the seventh; and total family income in the eighth. (If you want to backtrack up, press Shift-Return. Adjust the width of column A and the window size again as needed.)
e.) Select cell B2, and type dad's working income of 850. (Don't try to put the $'s in yet!) Using Tab as needed, type in the other monthly incomes: mom 1000; teenager 450; kid 110. Similarly, enter the number of months each family member is paid per year in row 3: dad 12, mom 9, teenager 2, and kid 12.

12. Don't be afraid of making mistakes; you can easily change anything in the spreadsheet, anytime you want to change it:

a.) If you make a mistake, and you are still typing in the same cell, just press the Backspace key to backspace over your error, then retype.

b.) If you discover an error after you are in another cell, select (click in) the cell where the mistake is and type the corrected entry; the old number will disappear with the first keystroke. If you want to correct a single letter or number within the cell, click a second time in the formula bar after the offending letter or number, backspace over it, and type your correction. Press the Enter key.

Note: Sometimes Excel "hangs," that is, everything quits working. Often this is a result of typing an entry in a cell without pressing Enter. If Excel refuses to "work," press Enter.

c.) If you want to delete an entire row or column, click on the offending row number, or column label, then pull down Edit to Delete. To insert a new blank row or column, click on the row number or column label that will be the next row below, or the next column to the right of, where you want to make the insertion, and pull down Edit to Insert.

13. Next we begin to exploit the true power of Excel by writing formulas to do simple mathematical operations on our numbers. We want to make it so the product of the income/month times months paid/year for each family member appears in row four.

a.) Select (click) B4, and type an = symbol. The beginning of the formula for cell B4 will appear in the formula bar.

b.) Click B3. (You're telling Mac which cell you want him to operate on.) The coordinates for B3 will appear in the formula bar next to the = sign.

c.) Since you want a product, press * (asterisk), which is the computer symbol for times (multiply).

d.) Click B2, the other number you want Mac to operate on. This cell's coordinates will appear in the formula also.

e.) Now press Enter. Bingo! The product of B3 and B2 will magically appear in B4. (If it doesn't, pull down Options to Calculation.... When the dialog box appears, click the Automatic button.) You have written a formula for finding the product of any monthly payment and any number of months which may ever
appear in cells B2 and B3. You will never have to write this formula again, and it will continue to work, no matter what numbers you type into B2 and B3!

14. Instead of doing the whole formula over again for each family member, you can "copy dad's formula across" like this:

   a.) Select (and black out) all four "total working income" cells at once, by clicking and dragging from B4 to E4.

   b.) Pull down Edit to Fill Right. The total working income products for each family member should appear in each of their respective cells.

15. Using the methods already discussed in step 11, label, in row 5, the other income sources for each family member: dad, loan repmt; mom, bank intrst; teenager, babysitg; and kid, gifts.

16. Enter, in row 6, the amount per year from each of these sources: dad, 9600; mom, 360; teenager, 120; kid, 60.

17. Write a formula for cell B7 which calculates dad's total income; then copy the formula across, to get the total income for each of the other three family members. Try to figure out how to do it yourself, before you look at the directions:

   a.) Click B7. Type =. Click B6 (one of the numbers to be summed). Type + (you do want to add this time, don't you?). Click on (CAREFUL!) B4 (the other number to be summed). Your new formula should be in B7, and in the formula bar. Now press enter, and dad's total income should appear.

   b.) Now copy the formula across using the procedure in step 6. (Obviously, different cells are involved this time.)

18. Finally, write yet another formula, which calculates total family income, for cell B8. This formula will have four "addends," for the total incomes of each of the four family members: you'll have to type + three times. On the other hand, you won't have to copy across this time. Can you figure it out? The final results should look something like the spreadsheet at the top of the next page:
19. Spreadsheets can give one amazing powers in playing the game of "what if?" Experiment with your newly prepared family worksheet to see what effects various changes might have on the total family income:

   a.) What if dad gets a new job at twice the pay per month? Select B2; type 1700; press "enter." What is the total family income now?

   b.) What if mom falls off of her horse, uses up her savings to pay the medical bills (now there's no bank interest), and misses 4 months of work? Now what? Make the changes and see what happens.

20. If the absence of $ symbols bothers you, select rows 2, 4, 6, 7, and 8, by holding down the [F5] key, while you click on each of those row numbers. Then pull down Format to Number. When the dialog box appears, click on the first "$" in the list box; then click "ok."

How to quit, and start back up again

21. When you are ready to quit **DO NOT** turn off the computer. If you turn off the computer without going through proper shutdown procedure, you may lose hours of work, or even damage your disk.

   a.) When you are ready to quit, pull down File to Quit. If you have not saved already, a dialog box will ask you if you want to save your work. Click "yes" because you will need this "family budget" spreadsheet to practice making graphs and charts later. After the disk drive hums briefly, the desktop will reappear. If you can already see the desktop, skip this step.

   b.) Once you are back to the desktop, the best way to quit is to pull down Special to Shut Down. This ejects all disks and resets the computer. If you are done, you can turn off the computer; or if you want change startup disks and do
something totally different with the computer, you can reboot with a different startup disk.

c.) You can also quit by dragging the disk into the trash. After Mac spits out the disk, turn him off.

d.) If you want to keep the present disk as the startup disk, and keep its directory window on the screen; perhaps while you copy a file from one disk to another, select (click on) the disk icon, and pull down File to Eject, or type "-E. Mac will spit out the disk that was selected.

22. When you want to go back to work on the same Excel document, boot the system, and open the directory window. The Excel worksheet document icon should be there with the name you gave your paper in step 8. (You may have to adjust the window size to see it.) Reopen your paper by double-clicking on that worksheet icon.

Depending on your goals for Excel, you may want to skip ahead at this point:

to make graphs and charts, continue to step 23
to make a database and/or create a macro skip to step 26
for grade book directions skip to step 32
to print something skip to step 44
to move work into documents created with other applications see step 46

Here’s how to use the graph and chart-making features of Excel:

23. Make a column chart (histogram) of comparative family incomes:

   a.) Select the first two rows by dragging over row number labels 1 and 2.

   b.) Pull down File to New. When the dialog box appears, click the Chart button. Click "ok." Watch. Isn’t that a gas?!?!?

24. Change your column chart to a pie chart:

   a.) Pull down Chart to Main Chart Type....

   b.) When the dialog box appears, click the Pie button. Click "ok." Whoopee!!!

   c.) Pull down Chart to Add Legend. A legend box will appear; but we can make it look much better.
d.) Click on the edge on any one pie slice. Little black boxes, called "handles," will appear around the slice’s edges.

e.) Pull down Format to Patterns. When the dialog box appears, click on an area pattern you might like to fill a pie slice with. Click "ok." The selected pie slice should fill with your chosen pattern.

f.) Click on the edge of the next pie slice; fill it with a different pattern, etc.

h.) Close the pie chart and close the income worksheet by clicking in the close boxes. **Save** if you want.

25. **Try making a line graph:**

a.) Pull down File to New... Click "ok" in the dialog box.

b.) Type the following time and temperature table into your worksheet:

```excel
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Time</th>
<th>Temperature</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>8 AM</td>
<td>62°F</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10 AM</td>
<td>65°F</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12 PM</td>
<td>68°F</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 PM</td>
<td>70°F</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4 PM</td>
<td>72°F</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
```

```
=WORKING INCOME/MONTH

- dad
- mom
- teenager
- kid
```
c.) Select columns B and C, rows 1 through 14. (Click and drag from B1 to C14.)

d.) Pull down File to New. When the dialog box appears, click the Chart button. Click "ok."

e.) When the chart appears, pull down Chart to Main Chart Type. Click the Line button. Click "ok." A line graph will appear, but we can make it look better too.

f.) To put the "X" axis (category) values beneath the tic marks (so there is no ambiguity), click on the horizontal "X" (category) axis. Round white "handles" will appear at each end of it. Pull down Format to Axis.... When the dialog box appears, click the "X" out of the box for Value Axis Crosses Between Categories. Click "ok."

g.) To make the graphed changes more dramatic, click on the vertical "Y" (value) axis. Pull down Format to Axis.... When the dialog box appears, type "50" in the Minimum: box, and "50" in the Category Axis Crosses At: box. (Can you figure out why?) Click "ok."

h.) To label your axes: Pull down Chart to Attach Text. Click either axis button. Click "ok." Type the axis title. Press Enter. Repeat the steps here in step h to label the other axis.

i.) My line graph is at the top of the next page; how did yours come out?
Here's how to use *Excel* as a database:

26. Begin with a new worksheet: if necessary, **Close** your previous work, and pull down **File to New**.

Here is some sample data which we will use in step 27:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Address</th>
<th>Age</th>
<th>Sex</th>
<th>Sport</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Smith, Sam</td>
<td>1414 15th Ave NW, Seattle</td>
<td>44</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>Hockey</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ames, Alfreda</td>
<td>12 Westchester, London</td>
<td>18</td>
<td>F</td>
<td>Soccer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wilson, Wilbert</td>
<td>5432 Rawson, Vancouver</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>Tennis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Beatty, Bill</td>
<td>243 Raupuchna, Bangok</td>
<td>67</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>Hockey</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Norris, Noreen</td>
<td>4 Camden, London</td>
<td>62</td>
<td>F</td>
<td>Tennis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ozment, Ozzie</td>
<td>941 Bennet, Seattle</td>
<td>45</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>Hockey</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

A single row of data, in this case the information about one person, is called a **record**. One record looks like this:

Smith, Sam 1414 15th Ave NW, Seattle 44 M Hockey

A datum of a particular type, for example a name, is called a **field**. On a worksheet, fields are found in columns; and records are found in rows.

27. **Type the field names as follows:**

   a.) Click cell A9. (Note: we'll leave the first 8 rows blank for now!) **Type name**

   b.) Press **Tab**. Cell B9 should become active. **Type address**

   c.) Press **Tab**. **Type age** in C9.

   d.) Using **Tab** as needed, **type sex** in D9, and **sport** in E9.
28. Enter step 26's sample data in the rows below your field names: one record per row. Be sure all the names are in the "name" column; the addresses in the "address" column, etc.:

a.) Click in cell A10. Type *Smith, Sam*; be sure there are no extra spaces at the beginning or the end of the text in any field. Such spaces will screw up the "search" features of the database later. Be sure you always type **LAST NAME FIRST !!!!!** Press Tab.

b.) Type *1414 15th Ave NW, Seattle*; you'll need to adjust the column width as described in step 11. Press Tab. Continue to type the rest of the record, pressing Tab as needed.

c.) When you finish the first record you will have to click in cell A11 to begin the next record.

d.) However you can speed the process up greatly by selecting all the cells at once. Click and drag from A10 on the upper left to E15 on the lower right. Now all you have to do is press Enter whenever you want to move to the next cell; when you get to the end of one record, Enter automatically takes you to the first cell in the next record, etc. If you want to back up, press Shift-Enter.

e.) When you're done, pull down File to Save. Type a name in the dialog box. Click Save.

29. To alphabetize your records according to the first field:

a.) Select (blacken) all the records you want sorted: Click and drag from A10 on the upper left to E15 on the lower right, if it isn't still selected.

**Warning:** if you do not select all the fields, they will be "left behind" when the sorting happens, and your database will become hopelessly mixed-up.

b.) Pull down Data to Sort. When the dialog box appears, make sure the Rows button is clicked. Click "ok."

30. To extract records that meet a particular criteria:

a.) Select all field names and records by clicking and dragging from A9 on the upper left to E15 on the lower right. (If you have a big database: click on the upper left cell; scroll to the lower right cell; **Shift-click** on the lower right cell.)

b.) Pull down Data to Set Database. This defines the database range over which you will search.
c.) Specify the criteria and the extraction area

> Select the field names in row 9. Pull down Edit to Copy.

> Select cell A1. Pull down Edit to Paste. You will specify the search criteria below row 1.

> Select cell A4. Pull down Edit to Paste. The extracted records will appear below row 4.

> Enter the criteria in the cell below the name of the file you want searched: For example if you want to list all tennis players, type tennis in cell E2 below sport.

When you enter this criteria, Excel will find everything that begins with what you type. If you put an asterisk (*) before and after a series of letters, Excel will find everything containing that series of letters. If you aren't sure of the spelling, substitute a ? for the uncertain letter. For example, if you type Peters?, Excel will find both Petersgn and Petersgn. When * and ? are used in this way, they are called "wild cards." If you want to find all numbers greater than 10, type ">10" etc.

> Define criteria range: Click and drag from A1 to E2; pull down Data to Set Criteria.

> Define the extraction area: Click and drag from A4 to E7.

d.) Pull down Data to Extract. When the dialog box appears, click "ok." A list of all tennis players should appear in the extraction area.

e.) Try to extract the records of all players below age 27:

> Select and Clear cells A5 to E7. When the Clear dialog box appears, click the All button. Click "ok." Select the "Tennis" criteria cell; backspace "Tennis" out of existence.

> Select the criteria cell below age . Type <27.

> Define the extraction area: Click and drag from A4 to E7.

> Pull down Data to Extract... etc. A list of all those below age 27 should appear in the extraction area.

f.) Try to extract the names of all Seattle players. (Clue: *Seattle. See the fine print in 30c above.)

Here's the information I promised about macros:

If you find that you are doing the same certain sequence of steps over and over again, when you are working in Excel, you may need to create a macro for those steps. A
Macro is a computer recorded series of steps: you show the computer how to do a
certain task, and you assign the task a name. After that, all you need to do is ask the
computer to perform the named task, and the computer will do it!

31. **To create and run a simple Macro:**

   a.) Clear entire criteria and extraction area, A1 to E7.

   b.) Pull down **File to New**. When the dialog box appears, click **Macro Sheet**
   button. Click "ok."

   c.) Select cells A2 to A19 on the macro sheet. Pull down **Macro to Set
   Recorder**.

   d.) Adjust the windows so you can see both of them. Click on the worksheet, so
   it is active. Think ahead! You will be recording a macro after this step.

   e.) Pull down **Macro to Start Recorder**.

   f.) Carefully, repeat all of step 30c. (This is where you show Mac how to do it.)

   g.) Pull down **Macro to Stop Recorder**.

   h.) Select cell A1 on the macro sheet. Type **Mactest**. Press Enter. Pull down
   **Formula to Define Name**. Click the **Command** button. Click "ok."

   i.) Now test your macro:

   >Clear entire criteria and extraction area, A1 to E7, again.

   >Pull down **Macro to Run**. When the dialog box appears, double-click
   the name, **MacTest**.

   >All the steps of 30c should happen automatically with lightning speed
   before your very eyes !!! Think of the possibilities !!

**How to Make a Simple Grade book**

32. **Start with a new worksheet.** (If necessary, pull down **File to New.**)

   a.) Type the following names **LAST NAME FIRST** (One last then first name
   per cell) down column **A** in this order: Sam Jones, Mike Smith, Mary Brown,
   Bill Taylor, Jane White, Leslie Adams. (Press **Return** to move down to the next
   cell. Press **Shift** and **Return** to back up.)
b.) If column A isn't wide enough for the words, you can make it wider by clicking and dragging just next to the little line between the column labels.

c.) Don't be afraid of making mistakes; you can easily change anything in the spreadsheet, anytime you want to change it. Go back and review step 12, if you've forgotten how.

33. Here's how to sort your new list: Click the A at the top of the column; this selects the entire column. Then pull down Data to Sort.... When the dialog box pops up, click "ok." The names should sort themselves alphabetically !!! Incredible !!!

34. Click on cell A1 to select it. Pull down Edit to Insert. When the dialog box pops up, click "ok." The names should all move down one row, and Row 1 should now be empty. You've just learned to insert rows. Do it again, so that the top two rows are empty.

35. a.) Type these column headings (one heading per cell) across row 1: Names, GPA, Percent, Total, 1st Assnt, 1st Test, 2nd Assnt, 2nd Test. Press Tab to move one cell to the right. (Press Shift and Tab to back up. You may need to adjust the column widths (see step 11). If part of the worksheet slides out of sight, get it back by clicking and dragging on the little white boxes in the scroll bars.)

b.) Type the word, Possible under the Names column heading.

c.) Click and drag diagonally from cell E2 to cell H8. An area four columns wide and seven rows high should be blacked out. (The first four columns should NOT be blacked out.) This is one way to select large areas.

   Note: To select an even larger area, click in the upper left corner. Scroll to the lower right corner. Then press the Shift key, and click at the same time.

36. Enter these scores by typing the number and pressing enter after each score, beginning with the upper, left hand cell in the blacked-out selected area:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>1st Asnt</th>
<th>1st Test</th>
<th>2nd Asnt</th>
<th>2nd Test</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Possible</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adams, Leslie</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Brown, Mary</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jones, Sam</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Smith, Mike</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>17</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Taylor, Bill</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>White, Jane</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

If you make a mistake, back up by pressing shift-Enter. If you accidentally deselect the area, just reselect it in the same way, and press Enter until you are back to the right entry point. Now you know how to enter data over a large area.
37. Write the equation in cell D2 for finding the total of cells E2 through L2 as follows:

   a.) Select (click) D2, and type an = symbol. The beginning of the formula for cell D2 will appear in the formula bar.

   b.) Click E2. (You're telling Mac which cell you want him to operate on.) The coordinates for E2 will appear in the formula bar next to the = sign.

   c.) Since you want a total, press + (plus), which is the computer symbol for sum (add).

   d.) Click F2, the next number you want Mac to operate on. This cell's coordinates will appear in the formula also. Press + (plus) again.

   e.) Continue on in this manner from G2 through cell K2; then press L2 but do not press + after you click L2. Press Enter instead. Bingo! The sum of E2 through L2 will magically appear in D2.

   If it doesn't, pull down Options to Calculation.... When the dialog box appears, click the Automatic button.

   The reason for going all the way over to column L is to provide for additional grades to be added later.

You have written a formula for finding the sum cells E2 through L2. You will never have to write this formula again, and it will continue to work, no matter what numbers you type into these cells!

38. Instead of doing the whole formula over again for each student, you can "copy the formula down" like this:

   a.) Select (and black out) cells D2 to D12, by clicking and dragging from D2 to D12. (You copy the equation down to row 12 to allow for additional students.)

   b.) Pull down Edit to Fill Down. The total points for each student should appear in each of their respective cells.

39. You will need to define a name, in order to write the percent equation which comes next: Select D2. Pull down Formula to Define Name...; type in possible, and click "ok." Now you know how to define a name.

40. Type the percent equation in cell C2:

   a.) Type = then click cell D2. Press * (asterisk, which is the computer symbol for times or multiply) then type 100. Press / (backslash, which is the computer symbol for divide) then type possible. The formula in the formula bar should look like this:
The equation means we take a kid's total, multiply it times 100, and divide by the possible points. The cell we defined as "possible" must be part of every single percent equation. If you want an equation to always refer to the same cell, you must first define a name for that cell. Otherwise cell references will be relative to the cell where the answer is being calculated, and an equation such as the above percent equation won't work. Now you know how to do absolute cell references in an equation.

b.) Press Enter. "100" should appear in cell C2. Copy it down (Fill Down) the column to row 12. You should have a percent score now for each student.

41. This GPA equation requires a student to have 65% in order to get a C- (1.5 GPA), and 92% to get an A- (3.5 GPA):

\[=0.074\times C2-3.315\]

This is an equation for a straight line graph of the form: \(y=mx+b\). That is, for every percent score \(x\), there is a GPA score \(y\). \(0.074\) and \(-3.315\) are merely the constant values for the \(m\) and \(b\) that we needed for our particular percent/GPA conversion graph.

Type the GPA equation into B2, and copy it down. Does your "grade book" look like this?

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>A</th>
<th>B</th>
<th>C</th>
<th>D</th>
<th>E</th>
<th>F</th>
<th>G</th>
<th>H</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Names</td>
<td>GPA</td>
<td>Percent</td>
<td>Total</td>
<td>1st Ass</td>
<td>1st Test</td>
<td>2nd Ass</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Possible Pts</td>
<td>4.09</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>60</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Adams, Leslie</td>
<td>1.00</td>
<td>58</td>
<td>35</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Brown, Mary</td>
<td>3.84</td>
<td>97</td>
<td>59</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>Jones, Sam</td>
<td>4.09</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>60</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>Smith, Mike</td>
<td>2.61</td>
<td>80</td>
<td>48</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>17</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>Taylor, Bill</td>
<td>1.25</td>
<td>62</td>
<td>37</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>White, Jane</td>
<td>1.62</td>
<td>67</td>
<td>40</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

To make the Percent and GPA columns more neat, I selected the percent column, and pulled Format down to Number. When the dialog box popped up, I clicked on the "0" and "ok."

42. Type some more scores in columns I and J, and see how the grades change.

As soon as new test and assignment scores are entered in an electronic grade book, a teacher can have the cumulative GPA for each student in a given class.

43. Rearrange your grades so they are listed by student number:

a.) Insert another column between the Names and GPA columns: select column B; pull down Edit to Insert.
b.) Label the new column *Number*. Assign a randomly selected student number to each student; make sure the numbers are in no particular order.

c.) Select rows 3 through 8, by clicking and dragging through those row numbers.

d.) Pull down **Data to Sort**

e.) When the dialog box pops up; type B3 in the highlighted rectangle of its 1st **Key** box. (In effect, you are asking *Excel* to sort the things in the column headed by B3.) Click "ok" The grade book should rearrange itself to be in order of student number.

f.) "Grab" the line that separates column labels A and B, and drag it to the left so the student names are hidden.

Note: You can post a "printout" of the grade book, listed by student number. Unless students have themselves volunteered their student numbers to others, their grade information will remain confidential, and yet it will be available for easy inspection. After you print the grades by student number, you can...

g.) Return to the alphabetical listing by "dragging" column B back to the right, and revealing the student names again. **Sort** again, but this time type A3 under 1st **Key**. The alphabetical listing should return.

h.) Can you figure out how to list your students by period? By grade point?

**Here's how to print:**

44. When you are ready to print; **Save**; then do the following:

a.) Select the cells to be printed. (Click and drag, Upper left to lower right.) Pull down **Options to Set Print Area**.

b.) Pull down **File to Print**. (You are not really going to print, just yet though!) When the dialog box appears, click the **Preview box**, then click "ok." A full page view of your future printed page should appear. If its not quite what you want, click "ok" and go back and change it. If it is what you want, click "ok" and press on!

c.) **Make sure the printer is turned on:**

i.) If you are using a **LaserWriter**, the **On/Off switch** is on the left end, just around the backside corner from the **Power Cord Socket**.
The green light on the front flashes as the LaserWriter warms up; then the yellow light starts flashing to show that the LaserWriter is processing a test print. The LaserWriter should deliver its own test print within two minutes. The yellow light will go out when the LaserWriter delivers the test print. When the green light is on steady, the LaserWriter is ready to print.

ii.) If you are using an ImageWriter, turn it on by depressing the on/off button, which is on the right side of the ImageWriter's top. Three green lights adjacent to the on/off button should come on. If you are using an old ImageWriter, there will be only two green lights. (If you don't get the right number of green lights, or the ImageWriter needs paper, and you don't know what to do, read the "ImageWriter" chapter.)

d.) Pull down File to Print. When the dialog box appears, "unclick" the Preview box, then...

i.) ...for the LaserWriter, click the "ok" button.

ii.) ...for the ImageWriter click the Best or Faster or Draft button (Best is slow, good-looking, and most copyable; Draft is fast and awful; Faster is in between.); then click the "ok" button.

It may take a minute or two, but if all goes well, Mac ought to start printing.

e.) In case of difficulty...

i.) ...if nothing happens, you may have skipped steps 3, 6, or 9: that is, you must have printer driver icon for the printer you intend to use present in your system folder; the AppleTalk "on-off" switch must be set the right way and the appropriate printer and port must have been selected in Chooser; and File must have been pulled down to Page Setup...

ii.) ...if something goes wrong during the ImageWriter printing process, first, turn off the printer by pressing its on/off button; then press \[Esc\].
(command-period). (Mac will tell you to stop the printing by pressing 
- . only, but this turns out to be much too slow.)

45. **To avoid excessive use of the mouse**: Use the keyboard command letters instead, which appear to the right of many of the options in the pull down menus. There are dozens of other keyboard commands as well, which are listed in the "Hurry up Mac" Chapter of this book, and the Microsoft literature.

46. **There are three ways to move your Excel spreadsheets, charts, or graphs into documents of other applications**: you can use the clipboard, the **Scrapbook**, or open the Excel document from within the other application.

   a. **Clipboard**: when Excel is on the same disk with graphics or word processing applications such as **Word**, **RSG**, or **MacDraw**:

      i.) Create the chart or graph in Excel, then pull down **Edit to Copy Chart**. Quit that application; **OR** select the portion of the spreadsheet which you want to transfer; and **Cut**(or **Copy**) it.

      ii.) Open your other document; click where you want the graphic to be, then pull down **Edit to Paste**. Your graphic should appear.

   b. **Scrapbook**: when Excel is on the same disk with applications such as **Word**, **RSG**, or **MacDraw**, you can create the graphics or spreadsheet in Excel, then...

      i.) Select the portion of the spreadsheet which you want to transfer; and **Cut**(or **Copy**) it; **OR** create the chart or graph in **Excel**, then pull down **Edit to Copy Chart**. Quit that application.

      ii.) Pull down **Apple** to **Scrapbook**, and when the scrapbook window opens, **Paste** your item. Click the close box.

      If there are several different portions you would like to paste, repeat steps i. and ii. Each time you paste into the scrapbook, another page is created. This is an advantage over the clipboard, because the clipboard will only accept one portion at a time. Once you have pasted something into the scrapbook, it is safe; you can do anything else you might want to do: use the clipboard, quit for the day, or take a vacation. What you paste in the scrapbook is safely stored on the disk, it will not disappear when the power goes off, like things which are stored in the clipboard.

      iii.) When you are ready to paste the **Scrapbook**-stored spreadsheet or graphic into the other document, pull down **Apple** to **Scrapbook**; and, when the scrapbook appears, page through it, by clicking on the scroll bar below its window, until you find the item you want.
iv.) **Cut**(or **Copy**) the item from the scrapbook. Click the close box.

v.) Click in the other document where you want your *Excel* spreadsheet or graphic to be, and **Paste**.

c.) You can save an *Excel* worksheet **as text**, then open it from **within** *Word*, *MacWrite*, or *RSG* :

i.) While you are working within *Excel*, pull down **File** to **Save As**. When the dialog box pops up, click the "text" button. Click "save."

ii.) Quit from *Excel*, and open the *Word*, *MacWrite*, or *RSG* destination document.

Once you are in *Word* or *MacWrite*, pull down **File** to **Open**. When the dialog box pops up, scroll to the name of your "text" *Excel* document, and double click on it. The "text" document should appear in your window as a *Word* or *MacWrite* document. At this point, you will be able to cut and paste it the same as any other *Word* or *MacWrite* document.

**OR**

Once you are in *RSG*, you can click with the **I-beam** tool in a text block to select it; then pull down **File** to **Get Text**. When the dialog box pops up, scroll to the name of your "text" *Excel* document, and double click on it. The "text" document should flow into the selected text blocks.
This chapter assumes that you want to be able to create a database management (record keeping) system which will allow you to quickly pull single selected facts from within a massive pile of information, or allow you to quickly rearrange and present that information in a more convenient format.

1. In order to get started, you'll need a Macintosh computer, and a work disk with *File* on it. (If your only copy of *File* is a master disk, you need to study the "How to Copy" chapter first, and make a second work disk copy. It is dangerous to use your only copy of an application: what will you do if you damage it?)

   a.) Connect the power cord and mouse to the back of the Mac. If you have an ImageWriter printer, or an external disk drive, or you have access to an AppleTalk system, connect them too. Study the little icons (pictures) above the connectors in the back of the Mac: they will help you to decide which peripheral (accessory) connects where. (If you use it, the AppleTalk connector must be plugged into the port below the printer icon.) Plug your Mac into a surge protector or a grounded (three prong) wall outlet.

   b.) Plug the keyboard into the jack at the base of the front of the Mac. Make sure the keyboard's plugs are right side up when you insert them, or you will bend the keyboard plug contacts.

   c.) Turn it on. The off-on switch is just above the power cord connection in the back. The Mac will "beep" when you turn it on.

   d.) Adjust the brightness. You can feel the knurled brightness knob under the ledge just below the apple logo, on the lower left front side of the computer. Don't turn the brightness any higher than necessary to see comfortably. The lower you keep the brightness, the longer the "picture tube" will last.

2. Hold the *File* work disk the way it is in this little picture: 📽️ but with your right thumb over the label. Slide it all the way into the disc slot below the screen, until it snaps in and the disc drive starts to click and hum.

   The computer is gathering system information from the disk which is necessary for its operation; this process is sometimes called "booting the system." A disk that "boots the system" is called the startup disk. A startup disk must have a system file on it. If Mac spits the disk out when you try to insert it, it's because the disk doesn't have a system file, or the disk is defective.)
After about 18 seconds, the disk drive will stop and the screen should look like this:

The menu bar containing the words **File Edit View Special** is across the top of the screen. The desktop, which is the rest of the screen below the menu bar, should be blank except for the disk icon and trash icon on the right side. (If the desktop looks instead like the screen diagram below, no harm has been done. Someone left it that way when they last quit.)

3. There should be a pointer somewhere on the screen. The pointer moves around on the computer desktop when you roll the mouse around on a real tabletop. Move the mouse to position the tip of the pointer in the center of the disk icon and "double-click" (tickaticka) the mouse button without moving the mouse. This opens the disk's directory window; and now your screen should look something like this:

The icons on the desktop above represent the computer files which are recorded on the disk:

File 150
a.) The **application icons** represent files which tell the computer how to do something special; in this case, how to be a database.

b.) Icons with a "dog-eared" (bent-over) corner represent **documents** which you create with applications like *File*.

c.) The **system folder** contains the **System** which tells Mac how to be a computer. The system also holds the **fonts** (type faces); and the **desk accessories** which are discussed in the appendix. Double-click the System Folder, and open it up:

![System Folder](image)

d.) The **Finder** creates the desktop and the icons which allow you to find your way around in the Mac.

e.) The **Clipboard File** is a "clipboard" which allows you to carry words or pictures from one document to another. The clipboard will only hold one piece of information at a time.

f.) The **Scrapbook File** is a place you can store words and pictures to use over and over in different documents. The scrapbook will hold many different items at once.

g.) The **LaserWriter** and **ImageWriter** are printer "drivers." If you want the computer to print documents on paper, you must have a driver for the printer you want to use. If you will be the first to use a LaserWriter printer after it has been turned on in the morning, you will also need a **Laser Prep**. If the printer driver you want is missing, you need to study "**How to Copy**."
4. Close the **system folder** window by putting the tip of the pointer in the **close box**, and clicking once, without moving the mouse. (This is called "clicking on" the close box.)

Note: The box in the lower right corner of each window is called a "Size Box." If you put the tip of the pointer in it, and then hold the mouse button down while you "drag" the size box, you can change the shape of the window. Also, you can move the entire window by using this same strategy to "click and drag" the title bar around. This manipulation of windows can be quite useful when you are trying to arrange things so that you can see the contents of more than one window at once. Some windows have a "zoom" box in their upper right corner. If you click on it, it will "toggle" the window between full size, and some other size you may have selected with the "Size Box."

5. Click and hold the mouse button, while you attempt to drag down the word View in the menu bar. A list should appear beneath it. The word View will not drag, but as you pull the pointer down, each line in the list is highlighted (blackened) in sequence. When the line **by Size** is highlighted, release the mouse button. (This process is called "pulling down View to by Size." The icons in the directory window should change into a list of the files and applications arranged in order of size, largest first. (The sizes are measured in "k." You may have to adjust the size box to see them.) If you wish, you can instead rearrange the list alphabetically by pulling down View to by **Name**, etc. Try it, then change the window back to by **Icon**.

6. The Apple menu, , lists desk accessories on your disk, such as the **Scrapbook** and **Chooser**. Use **Chooser** before you begin, to prepare Mac for the kind of printing he will do when you are ready to print your creation: pull down to **Chooser**. When the Chooser window appears....

   a.) If you will be using a LaserWriter or an ImageWriter connected to the AppleTalk network, click on the "active" button, the printer icon, and the printer's name. If they do not "highlight" when you click on them, then something is wrong.
If the printer icon isn't there, you need to go back to step 3g. If the printer's name isn't there, or if it refuses to highlight (white print on black) when you click on it, then the printer is not turned on; or the printer and/or your Mac are not connected to the AppleTalk network.

b.) If you will be printing on an ImageWriter connected to your Mac only, click the "Inactive" button for AppleTalk; then click on the ImageWriter icon, and click on the icon of the printer port to which the printer is connected. You can tell which port by looking to see where the ImageWriter plugs into Mac's back.

c.) Click the Chooser's close box.

Note: If your Chooser doesn't look like the one in the diagram, pull down ⌘ to About the Finder. A little card should appear that tells you the finder is number 5.3. (If it's not, you need to replace the system, finder, and printer driver icons. "How to Copy" tells you how to do this.) Put the little card away by clicking on it.
7. Double-click (boot) the File application icon. When the dialog box opens, type the name of the datafile you intend to create. (say, "Athletes") Click "new." Two windows will appear, a form window and a datafile window, like these:

8. Pull down File to Page Setup... A dialog box titled LaserWriter or ImageWriter, depending upon which printer you selected with the Chooser, should appear. If you don't want to change anything, click the "ok" button, and the dialog box should go away.

   Note: If you will be using a LaserWriter, you should use LaserWriter fonts in File. Some of the LaserWriter fonts are Helvetica, Times, Symbol, and N. Helvetica. ImageWriter fonts such as Geneva are fine for the ImageWriter but they will make the LaserWriter take a very long time to print. To change fonts, pull down Form to Set Font... When the dialog box appears, select the font and font size you want. If the right choices aren't there, it tells how to put more fonts in the system in the "Font Appendix."

9. The insertion point should be blinking at the left hand end of the field name box, in the form window. Type the label for the first column (field) of your datafile. (say, "Name")

10. Press return. If this first field is to be text, and not numbers or dates, press return a second time. If it will be numbers or a date, click the appropriate button on the dialog box which has popped up, then click "ok."

11. The insertion point will jump to the left hand end of the next field name box. Type the label for the second field (column) in your datafile. (say, "Address") Again, press return. Again, indicate if this column will be numbers or dates; otherwise press return again. (An address is "text.")
12. The insertion point will jump to the third field name box. Type this heading. (say, "Age"; if you do type age, you may want to click on the number button, then "ok.")

13. Continuing in the same manner, label as many additional fields as you want. (say, "Sex" and "Sport")

Now at this point, there may not be room enough for all of your fields (columns) to be on the screen at the same time. Also, the columns (fields) may not be wide enough for names and addresses; and they may be too wide for sex and sport. So adjust the future columns to a better width, using the mouse pointer to "grab" the right hand ends of the field name boxes, and stretch and push them until you are satisfied.

14. When you are ready to start entering data, click just to the right of New up in the datafile window, under the first field name (which has miraculously appeared in the other window) for the first field (column). The form window will disappear, and the insertion point will now be winking in the upper left hand corner of the datafile window, at the start of your database.

15. Type your first entry in the first column of your first row. (say, "Smith, Sam"; if it is a name, type the last name first.)

16. Press return to go to the second column (field), and type that data in. (say, 1414 15th Ave NW, Seattle)

17. Proceed in this manner, pressing return each time after you type your data into a box. One full line entry (say, name, address, age, sex, and sport) is called a record. When you get to the end of one record, just press return again, and the insertion point will jump to the beginning of the next record.

Here is some suggested data to play with:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Address 1</th>
<th>Address 2</th>
<th>Age</th>
<th>Sex</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Smith, Sam</td>
<td>1414 15th Ave NW, Seattle</td>
<td></td>
<td>44</td>
<td>M</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ames, Alfreda</td>
<td>12 Westchester, London</td>
<td></td>
<td>18</td>
<td>F</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wilson, Wilpert</td>
<td>5432 Rawson, Vancouver</td>
<td></td>
<td>9</td>
<td>M</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Beatty, Bill</td>
<td>243 Raupuchna, Bangkok</td>
<td></td>
<td>67</td>
<td>M</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Norris, Noreen</td>
<td>4 Camden, London</td>
<td></td>
<td>62</td>
<td>F</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ozment, Ozzie</td>
<td>941 Bennet, Seattle</td>
<td></td>
<td>45</td>
<td>M</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Hockey
Soccer
Tennis

18. If you discover a mistake in the same box where you are still typing, just backspace over it, and retype. If the mistake isn't discovered until you are in another box; click in the box where the mistake is, after the word you want to correct, and proceed as you would with any other correction.
To back up in order to make a correction, press shift-return.

To jump to the first field in the next record, press Enter.

To duplicate whatever is in the field above, press [Command-period].

To instantly enter the present date, press (;) (Command-hyphen).

19. When you are finished with entering data in your datafile, alphabetize it according to the first field (column), by pulling down Organize to Sort. When the dialog box appears, click under the name for the first field. An "A-Z" will appear. Click "sort."

If you want to sort it in reverse, click on "A-Z," and it will change to "Z-A." Obviously, the number fields will sort by number instead.

You can arrange your records in order according to any other field, by proceeding in the same manner. But "clear" the dialog box first by clicking the "clear" button; then click under the name of the field you wish to sort by.

20. Pull down Organize to Find. "Clear" the dialog box which appears; then type Tennis in the fifth (last) field box. Click "find." The computer will list all the tennis players in seconds. Of course this isn't very impressive when there are only six records in your datafile; but when the records number in the hundreds or thousands, the feature is spectacular. Bring back the whole datafile by pulling down Organize to Show All Records.

21. Pull down Organize to Find, and once again "Clear" the dialog box. This time type >40, in the age field box, click "find"; and the computer will list the records for all athletes over forty! When Mac does this for hundreds of records, instead of just a handful, it can take several minutes unless the fields have been indexed.

22. Index a field so the process of searching hundreds of records for a certain field property will take seconds instead of minutes. Pull down Form to Format, click the Index box; click "ok." You will have to wait several minutes for the indexing to occur. The catch is that this index takes up a lot of space, so don't use it frivolously.

To change the form (to add a new field, for example), pull down Form to Show Form, click where you want to make the change, and proceed normally.

To start a new datafile pull down File to New Datafile.

To go to another existing datafile pull down File to Open Datafile, then select the datafile you want in the dialog box; and click "ok."
23. When you are ready to quit **DO NOT** turn off the computer. If you turn off the computer without going through proper shutdown procedure, you may lose hours of work, or even damage your disk.

   a.) When you are ready to quit, pull down **File to Quit**. If you have not saved already, a dialog box will ask you if you want to save your work. Click "yes" or "no." After the disk drive hums briefly, the desktop will reappear. (If you can already see the desktop, skip this step.)

   b.) Once you are back to the desktop, the best way to quit is to pull down **Special to Shut Down**. This ejects all disks and resets the computer. If you are done, you can turn off the computer; or if you want change startup disks and do something totally different with the computer, you can reboot with a different startup disk.

   c.) You can also quit by dragging the disk into the trash. After Mac spits out the disk, turn him off.

   d.) If you want to keep the present disk as the startup disk, and keep its directory window on the screen; perhaps while you copy a file from one disk to another, select (click on) the disk icon, and pull down **File to Eject**, or type `⌘-E`. Mac will spit out the disk that was selected.

24. When you want to go back to work on the same **File** document, boot the system, and open the directory window. The **File** document icon should be there with the name you gave your paper in step 7. Reopen your paper by double-clicking that icon. When your paper opens, use the scroll bar to get to where you want to start typing.

25. When you are ready to print; **Save**; then do the following:

   a.) **Make sure the printer is turned on**:

      i.) **If you are using a LaserWriter**, the **On/Off switch** is on the left end, just around the backside corner from the **Power Cord Socket**:

---

157  File
The green light on the front flashes as the LaserWriter warms up; then the yellow light starts flashing to show that the LaserWriter is processing a test print. The LaserWriter should deliver its own test print within two minutes. The yellow light will go out when the LaserWriter delivers the test print. When the green light is on steady, the LaserWriter is ready to print.

ii.) If you are using an ImageWriter, turn it on by depressing the on/off button, which is on the right side of the ImageWriter's top. Three green lights adjacent to the on/off button should come on. If you are using an old ImageWriter, there will be only two green lights. (If you don't get the right number of green lights, or the ImageWriter needs paper, and you don't know what to do, read the "ImageWriter" chapter.)

b.) Pull down File to Print Records. When the dialog box appears...

i.) ...for the LaserWriter, click the "ok" button.

ii.) ...for the ImageWriter click the Best or Faster or Draft button (Best is slow, good-looking, and most copyable; Draft is fast and awful; Faster is in between.); then click the "ok" button.

It may take a minute or two, but if all goes well, Mac ought to start printing.

c.) In case of difficulty...

i.) ...if nothing happens, you may have skipped steps 3, 6, or 9: that is, you must have printer driver icon for the printer you intend to use present in your system folder; the AppleTalk "on-off" switch must be set the right way and the appropriate printer and port must have been selected in Chooser; and File must have been pulled down to Page Setup...

ii.) ...if something goes wrong during the ImageWriter printing process, first, turn off the printer by pressing its on/off button; then press ⏎. 
(command-period). (Mac will tell you to stop the printing by pressing [Mac-]. only, but this turns out to be much too slow.)

26. **To avoid excessive use of the mouse**: Use the keyboard command letters instead, which appear to the right of many of the options in the pull down menus. There are dozens of other keyboard commands as well, which are listed in the "Hurry up" chapter of this book, and the Microsoft literature.

27. **There are three ways to move graphics into File**: you can use the clipboard, Art Grabber+, or the Scrapbook.

   a.) **Clipboard**: when File is on the same disk with graphics applications such as MacPaint or MacDraw:

      i.) Create the graphic in that application, select it, then pull down Edit to **Copy**. Quit that application.

      ii.) Open your File document; click where you want the graphic to be, then pull down **Edit to Paste**. Your graphic should appear.

   b.) **Art Grabber +**: If the graphic already exists on your disk as a MacPaint document, you can use Art Grabber to "grab" it while you are working in File.

      i.) Pull down to Art Grabber+. The word "Grabber+" will appear on the menu bar.

      ii.) Pull down **Grabber+ to Open**. A directory of your MacPaint documents will appear. You may need to open a folder to get at them. Double click on the title of the MacPaint document you want. It will appear in the **Art Grabber** window.

      iii.) Click and drag the "+" mouse pointer from the upper left corner to the lower right corner of the part of the MacPaint document you want to use. Pull down **Edit to Copy**. Click the close box of the Art Grabber window.

      iv.) Click where you want the graphic to be. Pull down **Edit to Paste**.

   c.) **Scrapbook**: when File is on the same disk with applications such as MacPaint or MacDraw, you can create the graphics or text in one of these applications, then...

      i.) Select the portion of the graphic or text which you want to transfer; and **Cut**(or Copy) it.

      ii.) Pull down to Scrapbook, and when the scrapbook window opens, **Paste** your item. Click the close box.
If there are several different portions you would like to paste, repeat steps i. and ii. Each time you paste into the scrapbook, another page is created. This is an advantage over the clipboard, because the clipboard will only accept one portion at a time. Once you have pasted something into the scrapbook, it is safe; you can do anything else you might want to do: use the clipboard, quit for the day, or take a vacation. What you paste in the scrapbook is safely stored on the disk, it will not disappear when the power goes off, like things which are stored in the clipboard.

iii.) When you are ready to paste the Scrapbook-stored graphic into File, pull down to Scrapbook; and, when the scrapbook appears, page through it, by clicking on the scroll bar below its window, until you find the graphic you want.

iv.) Cut(or Copy) the item from the scrapbook. Click the close box.

v.) Click in the File document where you want your graphic to be, and Paste.

28. To save a "changed" document without destroying the original: pull down File to Save As.... Type in the new name for your changed document. Click the "save" button.

File can do many other marvelous things unmentioned so far in this chapter. For example, a datafile similar to the one suggested here, can be used in conjunction with the merge feature of Word, to send out "personalized" form letters to hundreds of victims! Given a large enough storage, File can help to keep track of as many as 65,535 records, each of which contains as many as 1023 fields! You can even develop attractive records with more than one line, different fonts, and pictures. But you can investigate these capabilities yourself later, in the Microsoft File documentation, when you have become more adept with File's basics.
In writing this chapter I assumed that you might want to learn a little about what programming is like, and how Microsoft BASIC 2.0 works on the Macintosh. However, this chapter does not presume to teach basic programming; to really learn programming, you need to take a separate course, or work with a separate book, of some length.

1. In order to get started, you'll need a Macintosh computer, and a work disk with Microsoft Basic 2.0 on it. (If your only copy of Basic is a master disk, you need to study the "How to Copy" chapter first, and make a second work disk copy. It is dangerous to use your only copy of an application: what will you do if you damage it?)

a.) Connect the power cord and mouse to the back of the Mac. If you have an ImageWriter printer, or an external disk drive, or if you have access to an AppleTalk system, connect them too. Study the little icons (pictures) above the connectors in the back of the Mac: they will help you to decide which peripheral (accessory) connects where. (If you use it, the AppleTalk connector must be plugged into the port below the printer icon.) Plug your Mac into a surge protector or a grounded (three prong) wall outlet.

b.) Plug the keyboard into the jack at the base of the front of the Mac. Make sure the keyboard's plugs are right side up when you insert them, or you will bend the keyboard plug contacts.

c.) Turn it on. The off-on switch is just above the power cord connection in the back. The Mac will "beep" when you turn it on.

d.) Adjust the brightness. You can feel the knurled brightness knob under the ledge just below the apple logo, on the lower left front side of the computer. Don't turn the brightness any higher than necessary to see comfortably. The lower you keep the brightness, the longer the "picture tube" will last.

2. Find a work disk with Basic on it. Hold the disk the way it is in this little picture: but with your right thumb over the label. Slide it all the way into the disc slot below the screen, until it snaps in and the disc drive starts to click and hum.

The computer is gathering system information from the disk which is necessary for its operation; this process is sometimes called "booting the system." A disk that "boots the system" is called the startup disk. A startup disk must have a system file on it. If Mac spits the disk out when you try to insert it, it's because the disk doesn't have a system file, or the disk is defective.)
After about 18 seconds, the disk drive will stop and the screen should look like this:

![Diagram of a computer screen with a menu bar containing the words File Edit View Special, a disk icon, and a trash icon on the right side.]

The menu bar containing the words File Edit View Special is across the top of the screen. The desktop, which is the rest of the screen below the menu bar, should be blank except for the disk icon and trash icon on the right side. (If the desktop looks instead like the screen diagram below, no harm has been done. Someone left it that way when they last quit.)

3. There should be a pointer: \( \rightarrow \) somewhere on the screen. The pointer moves around on the computer desktop when you roll the mouse around on a real table top. Move the mouse to position the tip of the pointer in the center of the disk icon and "double-click" (tickaticka) the mouse button without moving the mouse. This opens the disk's directory window; and now your screen should look something like this:

![Diagram of a disk's directory window with a close box, title bar, program icon, scroll bar, system folder, and trash icon.]

BASIC 162
The icons in the directory window on the previous page represent the computer files which are recorded on the disk:

a.) The application icons represent files which tell the computer how to do something special; in this case, how to do Basic programming.

Note: There are two versions of MS Basic 2.0. We will be using version (d) for decimal, which is distinguished by the dollar sign, $ on the icon. (The other version (b) for binary, rounds off numbers, and is therefore faster. However it drives accountants crazy because the "rounding off" feature sometimes causes calculated amounts to be off by one cent!)

b.) The program icon represents a computer program like the ones you may write using Basic.

c.) The system folder contains the System which tells Mac how to be a computer. The system also holds the fonts (type faces); and the desk accessories which are discussed in the appendix. Double-click the System Folder, and open it up:

d.) The Finder creates the desktop and the icons which allow you to find your way around in the Mac.

e.) The Clipboard File is a "clipboard" which allows you to carry words or pictures from one document to another. The clipboard will only hold one picture or set of information at a time.

f.) The Scrapbook File is a place you can store words and pictures to use over and over in different documents. The scrapbook will hold many different items at once.

g.) The LaserWriter and ImageWriter are printer "drivers." If you want the computer to print your programs on paper, you must have a driver for the printer you
want to use. If you will be the first to use a LaserWriter printer after it has been turned on in the morning, you will also need a Laser Prep. If the printer driver you want is missing, you need to study "How to Copy."

4. Close the system folder window by putting the tip of the pointer in the close box (the little white box to the left of the words System Folder), and clicking once, without moving the mouse. (This is called "clicking on" the close box.)

Note: The box in the lower right corner of each window is called a "Size Box." If you put the tip of the pointer in it, and then hold the mouse button down while you "drag" the size box, you can change the shape of the window. Also, you can move the entire window by using this same strategy to "click and drag" the title bar around. This manipulation of windows can be quite useful when you are trying to arrange things so that you can see the contents of more than one window at once. Some windows have a "zoom" box in the their upper right corner. If you click on it, it will "toggle" the window between full size, and some other size you may have selected with the "Size Box."

5. Click and hold the mouse button, while you attempt to drag down the word View in the menu bar. A list should appear beneath it. The word View will not drag, but as you pull the pointer down, each line in the list is highlighted (blackened) in sequence. When the line by Size is highlighted, release the mouse button. (This process is called "pulling down" View to by Size.) The icons in the directory window should change into a list of the files and applications arranged in order of size, largest first. (The sizes are measured in "k." You may have to adjust the size box to see the sizes.) If you wish, you can instead rearrange the list alphabetically by pulling down View to by Name, etc. Try it, then change the window back to by Icon.
6. Begin by double clicking on the Microsoft BASIC application icon. When the application opens, the screen should look like this:

![Microsoft BASIC application interface](image)

7. Type a simple program in the list window. Type these two lines exactly as they are typed here:

```
PRINT "This is my first BASIC program"
PRINT "The product of six and eight is" 6*8
```

Don't worry about how to type the word PRINT in boldface; this is done automatically, as soon as you press Return at the end of each line.

8. Run your program by typing F5-R, or by typing the letters RUN in the Command window or by pulling down Run to Start. If all goes well, the output window should look like this:

```
This is my first BASIC program
The product of six and eight is 48
```

We learn a number of things from this first simple program:

a.) PRINT is a statement, one of about 150 very special words which have very particular meanings in the BASIC language. This particular statement tells the computer to display whatever you have put in quotes in the output window. Statements are automatically converted to boldface when you press Return.
b.) The computer can be used as a calculator. The PRINT statement also tells the computer to display the result of any calculation you type on the line after PRINT.  * (asterisk) means times (multiply); \(/\) means divide; and of course + means plus, and - means minus.

Pull down **Run** to **Stop**, or type **⌘-.** (command- period), to stop the program.

9. Pull down **File** to **Save**. When the dialog box pops up, type a name (any name will do, but make it short and memorable) for your program, and click on the "Save" button. Now type **NEW** in the command window, and press return; or pull down **File** to **New**. Your first program should disappear, and your windows should once again be clean.

10. When you are ready to quit **DO NOT** turn off the computer. If you turn off the computer without going through proper shutdown procedure, you may lose hours of work, or even damage your disk.

   a.) When you are ready to quit, pull down **File** to **Quit**. If you have not saved already, a dialog box will ask you if you want to save your work. Click "yes" or "no." After the disk drive hums briefly, the desktop will reappear. If you can already see the desktop, skip this step.

   b.) Once you are back to the desktop, the best way to quit is to pull down **Special** to **Shut Down**. This ejects all disks and resets the computer. If you are done, you can turn off the computer; or if you want change startup disks and do something totally different with the computer, you can reboot with a different startup disk.

   c.) You can also quit by dragging the disk into the trash. After Mac spits out the disk, turn him off.

   d.) If you want to keep a disk as the startup disk, and keep its directory window on the screen; perhaps while you copy a file from one disk to another, select (click on) the disk icon, and pull down **File** to **Eject**, or type **⌘-E**. Mac will spit out the disk that was selected.

11. When you want to go back to work, boot the system (see step 2), and open the directory window. A **Basic** program icon should be there with the name you gave your program in step 9. Reopen it by double-clicking on the program icon.

12. Try using Mac's "cut and paste" feature to edit your program:

   a.) Click and drag across the second line to select it. It should become "highlighted" (white letters on black).
b.) Pull down File to Cut.

c.) Click in front of the first line, to reposition the cursor.

d.) Pull down File to Paste. The old second line now precedes the first line. Hit Return to kick the old first line down to the second line.

13. **RUN** your "new" program. The lines that appear in the output window should be reversed in order from the first time. Pull down Run to Stop, or type [Esc]. Type NEW, then hit return to get a clean slate. Tell Mac not to save it this time.

14. Type another simple program:

```
PRINT "Enter price";
INPUT price
PRINT "Enter sales tax in decimal form, not percent."
PRINT "i.e. If sales tax is 7.6%, enter .076";
INPUT tax
LET total = price+tax*price
PRINT "Total is:";total
```

15. **RUN** it and see what happens. We learn some more things from this program:

   a.) The **INPUT** statement stops the program, and makes it wait while the program user types in some requested information.

   b.) This requested information is labeled according to the word following the **INPUT** statement.

   c.) The labels (called variables) can be used to write a formula after **LET** which tells Mac how to operate on the "inputted" information.
16. Here's yet another simple program:

```
count = 1

IF count > 7 THEN endcount
PRINT count
count = count + 1
GOTO counting

endcount:
```

a.) Imagine you are Mac, reading the above program:

"count = 1" tells you where to start.
"counting:" means nothing on the first pass.
"IF count > 7..." doesn't apply because first line already told you that
"count = 1."
"PRINT count" tells you to print "1" on the output screen.
"count = count + 1" redefines count (now the count = 2).
"GOTO counting" keeps sending you back to the "counting:" signpost
over and over until finally....
"IF count > 7... applies because count is now defined as 8.
"THEN endcount" sends us to the "endcount:" signpost, and finally you...
"PRINT "done".

b.) Type it into the Mac and try it!

17. To make your own window, type the following program in the list window:

```
WINDOW 2, "My Window", (10,40)-(120,80), 1
```

When you RUN it, you should get a window like the small one on the left:
If you select (click in) your new window, you will be able to move it and resize it, just like any other window. There are three other types of windows, but they don’t have titles; so you just leave an empty space between the commas, where the title would go, if you want one of them. Window type 2 has a double line border; type three has a plain border, and type four has a shadowed border.

18. Revise your program as follows:

```
WINDOW 2, "My Window", (10,40)-(200,80), 1
INPUT "What is your name"; X$
PRINT "Hi there "X$"!
```

**RUN** it and see what happens. Can you explain the reasons for all the revisions?

19. You can add your own menus to the Macintosh menu bar using BASIC:

A menu is created with a statement of the following form:

```
MENU, menu number, item number, state, label$
```

*Menu number* and *item number* are explained in the above drawing. The *state* is a 0, 1, or 2. An item with a state of “1” is a normal, potentially usable item; a disabled item has a state of “0”. State “2” items are usually items that have been selected; they have a check mark next to them, like **Helvetica** in the above example. Create your own menu by typing the following program verbatim in the **List** window:

```
MENU 6,0,1, "Winter Sports"
MENU 6,1,1, "Wrestling"
```
20. In the first paragraph of this chapter, I told you that the purpose of this chapter was to show how BASIC works on the Macintosh. I was not presuming to teach you programming. If you want to learn BASIC programming, try Basic Microsoft BASIC for the Macintosh by Coan & Coan, Hayden Book Company 1985. After you have learned to do basic programming, if you want to know all the BASIC tricks the Mac can do, a good reference is the book that comes with the software, Microsoft BASIC Interpreter by the Microsoft Corporation 1984.
This chapter is written for people who want to start by learning a little bit about the Macintosh computer in general, rather than starting with some specific application.

1. In order to get started, you'll need a Macintosh computer, and a work disk with both **MacPaint** and **MacWrite** on it. (If your only copy is a master disk, you need to study the "How to Copy" chapter first, and make a second work disk copy. It is dangerous to use your only copy of any application: what will you do if you damage it?)

   a.) Connect the power cord and mouse to the back of the Mac. If you have an ImageWriter printer, or an external disk drive, or you have access to an AppleTalk system, connect them too. Study the little icons (pictures) above the ports (connectors) in the back of the Mac: they will help you to decide which peripheral (accessory) connects where. (If you use it, the AppleTalk connector **must** be plugged into the port below the printer icon.) Plug your Mac into a surge protector or a grounded (three prong) wall outlet.

   b.) Plug the keyboard into the jack at the base of the front of the Mac. Make sure the keyboard's plugs are right side up when you insert them, or you will bend the keyboard plug contacts.

   c.) Turn it on. The off-on switch is just above the power cord connection in the back. The Mac will "beep" when you turn it on.

   d.) Adjust the brightness. You can feel the knurled brightness knob under the ledge just below the apple logo, on the lower left front side of the computer. Don't turn the brightness any higher than necessary to see comfortably. The lower you keep the brightness, the longer the "picture tube" will last.

2. Find a work disk with **MacPaint** and **MacWrite** on it. Hold the disk the way it is in this little picture:  but with your right thumb over the label. Slide it all the way into the disc slot below the screen, until it snaps in and the disc drive starts to click and hum.

   The computer is gathering system information from the disk which is necessary for its operation; this process is sometimes called "booting the system." A disk that "boots the system" is called the startup disk. A startup disk must have a system file on it. If Mac spits the disk out when you try to insert it, it's because the disk doesn't have a system file, or the disk is defective.)

   After about 18 seconds, the disk drive will stop and the screen should look like the picture at the top of the next page:
The menu bar containing the words **File Edit View Special** is across the top of the screen. The **desktop**, which is the rest of the screen below the menu bar, should be blank except for the disk icon and trash icon on the right side. (If the desktop looks instead like the screen diagram below, no harm has been done. Someone left it that way when they last quit.)

3. There should be a **pointer** somewhere on the screen. The pointer moves around on the computer desktop when you roll the mouse around on a real tabletop. Move the mouse to position the tip of the pointer in the center of the disk icon and **double-click** (tickaticka) the mouse button without moving the mouse. This opens the disk's **directory window**; and now your screen should look something like this:

The icons in the **directory window** above represent the computer files which are recorded on the disk. Each type is discussed on the next page:
a.) The applications tell the computer how to do something special; in this case, how to do graphics and be a word processor. You can read about other applications under Read First: on on page ii, and elsewhere in this book. Here are the icons for some of them:

![Icons](image)

b.) Icons with a "dog-eared" (bent-over) corner represent documents: original work which you create with applications like MacWrite or MacPaint.

c.) The system folder contains the System which tells Mac how to be a computer. The system also holds the fonts (type faces); and the desk accessories which are discussed in the appendix. Double-click the System Folder, and open it up:

d.) The Finder creates the desktop and the icons which allow you to find your way around in the Mac.

e.) The Clipboard File is an electronic "clipboard" which allows you to "carry" words or pictures from one document to another. The clipboard will only hold one picture at a time.

f.) The Scrapbook File is a place you can store words and pictures to use over and over in different documents. The scrapbook will hold many different items at once.

g.) The LaserWriter and ImageWriter are printer "drivers." If you want the computer to print documents on paper, you must have a driver for the printer you want to use. If you will be the first to use a LaserWriter printer after it has been
turned on in the morning, you will also need a Laser Prep. If the printer driver you want is missing, you need to study "How to Copy."

4. Close the system folder window by putting the tip of the pointer in the close box, and clicking once, without moving the mouse. (This is called "clicking on" the close box.)

Note: The box in the lower right corner of each window is called a "Size Box." If you put the tip of the pointer in it, and then hold the mouse button down while you "drag" the size box, you can change the shape of the window. Also, you can move the entire window by using this same strategy to "click and drag" the title bar around. This manipulation of windows can be quite useful when you are trying to arrange things so that you can see the contents of more than one window at once. Some windows have a "zoom" box in their upper right corner. If you click on it, it will "toggle" the window between full size, and some other size you may have selected with the "Size Box."

5. Click and hold the mouse button, while you attempt to drag down the word View in the menu bar. A list should appear beneath it. The word View will not drag, but as you pull the pointer down, each line in the list is highlighted (blackened) in sequence. When the line by Size is highlighted, release the mouse button. (This process is called "pulling down" View to by Size.) The icons in the directory window should change into a list of the files and applications arranged in order of size, largest first. (The sizes are measured in "k." You may have to adjust the size box to see the sizes.) If you wish, you can instead rearrange the list alphabetically by pulling down View to by Name, etc. Try it, then change the window back to by Icon.

6. The Apple menu, , lists desk accessories on your disk, such as the Scrapbook and Chooser. Use Chooser before you begin, to prepare Mac for the kind of printing he will do when you are ready to print your creation: pull down to Chooser. When the Chooser window appears....

a.) If you will be using a LaserWriter or an ImageWriter connected to the AppleTalk network, click on the "active" button, the printer icon, and the printer's name, if they do not "highlight" when you click on them, then something is wrong.
If the printer icon isn't there, you need to go back to step 3g. If the printer's name isn't there, or if it refuses to highlight (white print on black) when you click on it, then the printer is not turned on; or the printer and/or your Mac are not connected to the AppleTalk network.

b.) If you will be printing on an ImageWriter connected to your Mac only, click the "Inactive" button for AppleTalk; then click on the ImageWriter icon, and click on the icon of the printer port to which the printer is connected. You can tell which port by looking to see where the ImageWriter plugs into Mac's back.

c.) Click the Chooser's close box.

Note: If your Chooser doesn't look like the one in the diagram, pull down ☯️ to About the Finder. A little card should appear that tells you the finder is number 5.3. (If it's not, you need to replace the system, finder, and printer driver icons. "How to Copy" tells how to do this.) Put the little card away by clicking on it.
7. Double click the MacPaint application icon. When the MacPaint window opens, it should look like this:

8. Draw a picture:
   
   a.) Click on the pencil Tool.
   
   b.) Click and drag the pencil around on the screen.

   Draw anything you want. Don't worry about quality. We are not trying to learn about MacPaint here; we are only trying to learn about the Mac in general. Later, when you decide you want to make good pictures, and learn about MacPaint in particular, go to the "MacPaint" Chapter.

   c.) If you become totally disgusted with the mess you have created, double click on the eraser tool, and start over. Try some other tools if you like.

   d.) After you have experimented for a minute or two, click on the text tool, then click in the lower left corner of your creation, and type, "My first PaintDoc." If you make a mistake, backspace and retype.

   e.) When you save your creation by pulling down File to Save, a dialog box will pop up like the one on the next page:
9. Click in the close box of the MacPaint window. Your creation should disappear. Don't worry, you can get it back!


   a.) Draw another picture. This time you might like to use the spray can, and maybe some shape tools.

   b.) Click on the text tool, and type a new name for your new picture in the lower left corner. Call this one "PaintDoc II."

   c.) Save this picture, just as you saved the first. Again, type a name for it in the dialog box, say, "DocII."

   d.) Again, click the close box, and make your second creation go away.

11. This time, pull down File to Open. A different type of dialog box should pop up this time (see the next page):
The dialog box should list the names of your saved creations, if it doesn't, you may need to click on the name of your disk; in the example above, the name is Startup. Or if you are using more than one drive, you may need to click the Drive button. Double click on the name of a saved creation that you would like to see again. (Do it even if you wouldn't like to see it again!!) Your old creation should reappear.

12. The Scrapbook is a desk accessory that stores graphics (pictures) or text where they can be used conveniently in synthesizing new documents. Let's put your MacPaint creations in the Scrapbook:

a.) Select a portion of your old resurrected creation by clicking on the selection rectangle tool; and then clicking and dragging from the upper left to the lower right of a particularly good part of your picture. When you release the mouse button, there should be an animated 'marquee' of dotted lines around your selection.

b.) Pull down File to Copy.

Note: Whenever you Cut or Copy something, you put it into a part of Mac's memory called the Clipboard. It will stay there in his Clipboard memory until you turn the machine off, or Cut or Copy something else. (The Clipboard memory is short-lived, and it can only remember one thing at a time!) The Scrapbook, on the other hand, remembers more than one thing, and it will remember what you put there, even if you turn the machine off.

c.) Pull down ⌨️ to Scrapbook. The Scrapbook window should appear.

d.) Pull down File to Paste. The selected portion of your creation should appear in the scrapbook. Click the close box in the Scrapbook window.
e.) Repeat steps a through d for some other portion of your creation, or better yet, Close the MacPaint window, reOpen your other creation, and repeat steps a through d for that creation.

13. Pull down File to Quit. The desktop should reappear, and it should have two new MacPaint document icons on it, representing each of your new MacPaint creations:

```
Doc11   FirstPaintDoc
```

14. Double-click (boot) the MacWrite application icon. When the MacWrite window opens, it should look something like this:

```
File   Edit   Search   Format   Font   Style

Untitled

Menu Bar   Title Bar   Align-left   Align-center   Scroll Arrow: one line at a time   Scroll Box: click and drag   Scroll Bar: one page at a time

“l” beam: shows where mouse is. Turns into mouse pointer “off the page”

Insertion point: appears where mouse is clicked
```

15. Pull down File to Page Setup... A dialog box titled LaserWriter or ImageWriter, depending upon which printer you selected with the Chooser, should appear. If you don't want to change anything, click the "ok" button, and the dialog box should go away.

16. Type some sentences into MacWrite. Type fast; we are going for maximum quantity of words in minimum time; quality is of no concern whatsoever. Note: Don't be afraid of making mistakes; you can easily change anything in the paper, anytime you want to change it:

   a.) To correct single letter errors, use the mouse to put the “l beam” after the letter you don't like, and click. (This moves the insertion point.) Backspace over the offending letter, and type in your correction.

   a.) To correct more than a few letters: select what you don't like by clicking and dragging over it. Then, if you want to destroy it, press backspace. If you only want to move it, pull
**Cut** and **Paste** are among the most powerful of the word processor commands. They are what allow you to pick up and move what you've already typed to a new location. (If you want, copy some words you've already typed to another part of your paper, and if you don't want to delete the original, follow the above directions; but pull down **Edit** to **Copy** instead of **Cut**.)

**Warning:** **Do not** use return when you get to the end of a line, unless you want a new paragraph. The "wordwrap" feature of the word processor takes care of this automatically. If you use return to start a new line, it defeats the word processor, and makes a terrible mess. Use return only to change paragraphs.

17. Paste the art which you put in the **Scrapbook** into your **MacWrite** document:

   a.) Pull down **Edit** to **Scrapbook**. The scrapbook window should pop up:

   ![Scrapbook Window]

   b.) Use the **scroll bar** at the bottom of the scrapbook window to "turn the pages" in your scrapbook until you find the page you want.

   Note: Scroll bars are used in most Macintosh applications, not just the **Scrapbook**: clicking the grey portion of the **Scroll Bar** turns one page at a time; clicking the **Scroll Arrow** turns the pages much more rapidly; dragging the white **Scroll Box** allows you to move quickly to a particular place in the application.

   c.) Pull down **File** to **Copy**. Click the **Scrapbook** close box.

   d.) Click at the location in your **MacWrite** document where you want to past your **MacPaint** creation. Pull down **File** to **Paste**.

   e.) Repeat steps a through d for your other picture.

   Note: The **Scrapbook**, the **Clipboard**, and other methods of working between applications are all discussed at length in the " Integrating Multiple Applications" Chapter.

18. When you are ready to print; **Save**. Type your new document's name in the dialog box, and click the **Save** button; then do the steps on the next page.

The Desktop 180
a.) Make sure the printer is turned on:

a.) If you are using a LaserWriter, the On/Off switch is on the left end, just around the backside corner from the Power Cord Socket:

The green light on the front flashes as the LaserWriter warms up; then the yellow light starts flashing to show that the LaserWriter is processing a test print. The LaserWriter should deliver its own test print within two minutes. The yellow light will go out when the LaserWriter delivers the test print. When the green light is on steady, the LaserWriter is ready to print.

b.) If you are using an ImageWriter, turn it on by depressing the on/off button, which is on the right side of the ImageWriter’s top. Three green lights adjacent to the on/off button should come on. If you are using an old ImageWriter, there will be only two green lights. (If you don't get the right number of green lights, or the ImageWriter needs paper, and you don't know what to do, read the "ImageWriter" chapter.)

b.) Pull down File to Print. When the dialog box appears...

a.) ...for the LaserWriter, click the "ok" button.

b.) ...for the ImageWriter click the Best or Faster or Draft button (Best is slow, good-looking, and most copyable; Draft is fast and awful; Faster is in between.); then click the "ok" button.

It may take a minute or two, but if all goes well, Mac ought to start printing.

c.) In case of difficulty...

a.) ...if nothing happens, you may have skipped steps 3, 6, or 15: that is, you must have a printer driver icon for the printer you intend to use present in your system folder; the AppleTalk "on-off" switch must be set the
right way and the appropriate printer and port must have been selected in Chooser; and File must have been pulled down to Page Setup...

19. When you are ready to quit **DO NOT** turn off the computer. **If you turn off the computer without going through proper shutdown procedure, you may lose hours of work, or even damage your disk.**

   a.) When you are ready to quit, pull down File to Quit. If you have not saved lately, a dialog box will ask you if you want to save your work. Click "yes" or "no." After the disk drive hums briefly, the desktop will reappear. (If you can already see the desktop, skip this step.)

   b.) Once you are back to the desktop, the best way to quit is to pull down Special to Shut Down. This ejects all disks and resets the computer. If you are done, you can turn off the computer; or if you want change startup disks and do something totally different with the computer, you can reboot with a different startup disk.

   c.) You can also quit by dragging the disk into the trash. After Mac spits out the disk, turn him off.

   d.) If you want to keep the present disk as the startup disk, and keep its directory window on the screen; perhaps while you copy a file from one disk to another, select (click on) the disk icon, and pull down File to Eject, or type ⌘ - E. Mac will spit out the disk that was selected.

20. When you want to go back to work, boot the system, and open the directory window. The document icons representing the your work of the past few steps should be there with the names you gave them.

21. No matter which applications you use, files you create will begin to fill up your desktop at a frightening rate. If you aren't careful, after a few weeks of working with Mac, your desktop will be a hopeless jumble of icons. You will quickly find that you need to stay organized as you work.

   a.) The **folder** is a useful tool for staying organized in any office. To make a new folder for your Mac's desktop, pull down File to New Folder. A new folder should pop into existence in the directory window. Rename the folder by selecting, "Empty Folder" (Click and drag across it.) and typing a new name, say, "GreatArt." Make the name represent what the contents will be; but don't duplicate another icon's name.

      i.) You can put document icons in your new folder by dragging them into the folder. When the folder turns black, release the mouse button, and the icon will disappear into it.

      ii.) If you want to organize your folder as you fill it up, open it, use the size box to size it as you see fit; and drag the icons into your folder's open directory window in the pattern you want. You can line them up neatly by pulling down Special to Clean Up.
b.) Make a second folder for your *MacWrite* document(s), and drag them into it.

22. The **hierarchical file system** (HFS) allows you to put folders inside of folders inside of folders. Make a third folder, and call it something like, "CreativeWork." Put your other two folders inside of it.

Here's how I organized the first edition of this book when I was writing it:

a.) I kept the book on a **data disk** called "NewIdiotBook." The applications were on "MacWordingSet 1," my **working disk.** I kept three folders on data disk"NewIdiotBook," one for each of the three parts. The directory window was opened by double-clicking on the disk icon:
b.) The "Part II" folder (which I could also open by double-clicking) contained four more folders, one per section. And the "IIIBGraphics" section folder (opened the same way) contained the chapters in the graphics section:

If I wanted to go back and work on a file, say "mChap8(Draw)," I could double-click that file, and if the application for that file was present, the file would open, and I could start working on Chapter Eight again.

23. The hierarchical file system's (HFS) value becomes apparent when you want to open a file from within an application such as Word. Reboot MacPaint, and after it opens, click the close box, and pull down File to Open. An HFS dialog box will appear. To see how it works, continue reading:

Let's suppose I'm typing along in some new part to my book, and I want to go back and use something that I have already typed in Chapter Eight. It takes a long time to quit from an application, go back to the desktop, and open another file. I don't want to do this and neither will you. So, to open another file while working within a particular application see procedures on the next page:
a.) Pull down File to Open. A dialog box will appear. If it displays the "wrong" disk name below the words "Select a Document," click on the Drive button.

![Screen shot of the System Folder dialog box]

(If you don't have an external disk drive, click Eject, and when Mac spits out the first disk, insert the disk which contains the file you want.)

b.) A new box will appear for the new disk, containing the names of the folders, applications, or files which are in its directory window. Click on the name of the folder you would like to open, then click the Open button. (Or, as a shortcut, you can just double-click the name of the folder you would like to open.)

![Screen shot of the NewIdiotBook dialog box]

c.) You may recall that I had folders inside of that folder, so when the Part II folder "opens" it will reveal the names of more folders. So it is necessary, in turn, to open the folder for IIBGraphics:

![Screen shot of the Part II dialog box]
d.) And inside it, is the file (document) we were looking for:

If you double-click on it, you can open it without having to quit the application you happen to be working in.

Now try making the HFS system work with your folders and documents!
Putting information into a computer for the first time can be a terribly painstaking process. But one of the great advantages of the computer is its ability to make almost instantaneous copies of that information once it has been entered. "Insurance" is the most common reason for copying; we want to insure that our painstaking labor will not be lost.

Note: One of the great disadvantages of the computer is its ability to allow hours of painstaking work to instantaneously disappear forever. Usually such disappearances are due to voltage surges, power failures, defective disks, or human stupidity. Whatever the cause, it is absolutely essential to make "back-ups" of every thing you do. If you don't, then one day for sure, you will be sorry you didn't.

There are several different copying processes to understand:

1. Duplication of single documents, etc. within a disk (step 1, below)
2. Copying of documents, etc. from "original" disk to "destination" disk (step 2)
3. Copying one entire disk, with all of its contents, onto another (step 3)
4. Creation of a "customized" work disk (step 4)

You must know which process is which. Otherwise, in your ignorant attempt to copy one thing, you may well destroy something else. Here are the summaries of each different copying process:

1. Duplication of single documents, files, or applications within a disk.

   a.) To do this when you are on the desktop: Select (click on) the icon which represents the file, document, or application you want to copy; then pull down File to Duplicate. Another icon will appear, labeled "Copy of ...(whatever the name of the original was):"

   b.) To do this when you are within an application, pull down File to Save As... When the dialog box box pops up, type in the name you want the duplicate to have, and click the "save" button. You will be able to continue working on the new copy, or open the original copy by pulling down File to Open. But, when you quit, and go back to the desktop, there will be icons there for both copies.
2. Copying a file from one disk to another (copying a document or application from an "original" disk to a "destination" disk). To do this while you are in the desktop:

a.) Insert the destination disk into the external disk drive. (If you don't have an external disk drive, press ⌘-E to eject the original disk, then insert the destination disk in the internal drive.)

If the destination disk is brand new, a dialog box will pop up and ask if you want to initialize the disk. Click Two-Sided or whatever is appropriate. There will be a pause while the Mac puts Mac tracks on the new disk. When Mac is done, another dialog box will ask you what to name the disk. Type an appropriate name such as "BillsData" Click "ok".

OR

If the destination disk has old stuff on it that you don't want any more, pull down Special to Erase Disk. Click Two-Sided or whatever is appropriate. Wait while Mac erases your old stuff.

If you want to change your working disk's title, it is immediately below the disk icon. Click and drag through it. Then type in the title for your new data disk.

b.) Open the destination disk's directory window. Click on the icon you wish to copy, and while holding the mouse button down, drag the icon from the first disk's window into the second disk's window:

The drives will hum briefly during the copying process. (If you have only one drive, exchange disks as directed by Mac.) When it is over you will have a copy on each disk.
3. Copying one entire disk (original), with all of its contents, onto another (destination) disk

Warning: Do not use the following processes to copy single documents, files, or graphics!!! If you only want to copy a single document, file, or graphic from one disk to another, use the process described in step 2 on the preceding page. The process we are about to describe in this step copies an entire original disk onto a destination disk; it will completely erase whatever is presently on the future destination disk.

a.) Insert the destination disk into the external disk drive. (If you don't have an external disk drive, press ` - E to eject the original disk, then insert the destination disk.)

If the destination disk is brand new, a dialog box will ask if you want to initialize the disk. Click Two-Sided or whatever is appropriate. There will be a pause while the Mac puts Mac tracks on the new disk. When Mac is done, another dialog box will ask you what to name the disk. Type an appropriate name such as "BillsMacWrite." Click "ok".

OR

If the destination disk has old stuff on it that you don't want any more, pull down Special to Erase Disk. Click Two-Sided or whatever is appropriate. Wait while Mac erases your old stuff. If you want to change your working disk's title, it is immediately below the disk icon. Click and drag through it. Then type in the title for your new copy.

b.) When the destination disk icon appears, drag the original disk icon onto the destination disk icon. When Mac's dialog box asks if this is what you really want to do, click "ok."

The drives will hum at length during the copying process. (If you have only one drive, exchange disks as directed by Mac.) When it is over you will have two identical copies of the same disk.

If your new copy won't work, the master is probably "copy-protected." A method for copying "copy-protected" disks is discussed on page 153.
4. Creation of a "customized" work disk. (You will need a "master," and a blank disk (or a disk you don't care about), and the Macintosh System Tools.)

Warning: Do not use the following processes to copy single documents, files, or graphics!! If you only want to copy a single document, file, or graphic from one disk to another; use the process described in step 2 on the preceding page. The process we are about to describe in this step creates entirely new content for a new work disk; it completely erases whatever is presently on it.

a.) Insert the Macintosh System Tools disk in the internal drive.

b.) Insert the blank or "used" disk into the external disk drive. This disk is called the destination disk. (If you want your working disk to be double-sided, the external drive must be a double sided drive. If you don't have an external drive that fits your requirements, or you don't have an external drive at all, use [E] to eject the System Tools disk from the internal drive, and insert the destination disk there.)

If the destination disk is brand new, a dialog box will ask if you want to initialize the disk. Click Two-Sided or whatever is appropriate. There will be a pause while the Mac puts Mac tracks on the new disk. When Mac is done, another dialog box will ask you what to name the disk. Type an appropriate name such as "Bill'sMacWrite." Click "ok".

OR

If the destination disk has old stuff on it that you don't want any more, pull down Special to Erase Disk. Click Two-Sided or whatever is appropriate. Wait while Mac erases your old stuff. If you want to change your working disk's title, it is immediately below the disk icon. Click and drag through it. Then type in the title for your new working disk.

c.) Open the directory windows for both disks. Open the Utilities Folder of the System Tools. Drag the "Desk Accessories" and "Fonts" icons out into the System Tools directory window. Close the Utilities Folder. Click on empty space to "unselect" the Utilities Folder.

d.) Hold down the shift key while you select the System Folder, the "Desk Accessories" and the "Fonts" icons. Drag all three of them from the System Tools directory window to the directory window of the destination disk. If you don't have an external disk drive, exchange disks as directed by Mac. Wait for the process to stop. (You've just copied three icons from one disk to another. You can do the same thing with any other folder, file, or copyable application.)

e.) Pull down Special to Shut Down, then reboot the system with the destination disk. Your destination disk is now a startup disk.

You will want your work disk to have room to work and have the fonts and desk accessories you want. A good many "MacHeadaches" come from running out of memory, so it's often wise to remove every non-essential bit possible.

Because of this, you need to decide now what your printer situation will be. If you will never use a LaserWriter, and your Mac is not connected to an AppleTalk network, the ImageWriter is the only printer icon you will need. If you will only be using a LaserWriter, then you will only need the LaserWriter and Laser Prep icons; but if you will
also be using an ImageWriter tied into a network, then you will also need an AppleTalk ImageWriter icon, etc.

f.) Open the system folder. Drag the printer icons you don't need into the trash. Jiggle each doomed icon, by itself, over the trash can, until the trash can darkens. (If Mac tells you an icon is "locked," select it, pull down File to Get Info, and click the "X" out of the Locked box. At this point, even though an icon has been trashed, you can still change your mind by double-clicking the trash can, and dragging the lost items back into the directory window.) Next empty the trash by pulling down Special to Empty Trash. (Now it's too late to change your mind!) Fonts take up space too. This is how to exchange the fonts you don't need for the fonts you want:

g.) Double-click on the Font/DA Mover icon. (It should be in the system folder.) The fonts which are in the system now should listed on the left. If they aren't, click the font button. Click the Open button on the right. When the dialog box appears, select (click) "Fonts" from the list (you may have to click the little disk icon first, in order to find "Fonts") and click Open. A list of the fonts available in the "Fonts" file will appear in the list on the right side.

h.) From the list on the left side, select (that is, click, drag over, and highlight) the names of all the listed fonts and sizes in the left (systems) list of the dialog box. There may be zillions of names and sizes like Courier 10-12, Venice 14, New York 9-36, Times 10-12, etc. Select them all; then click the >>Copy<< button. This copies the system fonts over into the "Fonts" file in case you want them later.

i.) Now click the Remove button, while all the system fonts are still selected. Mac will tell you not to take his system fonts. Not to worry, you can't take them even if you want to; there will still be a few fonts left for the two of you! Click "ok." Trust me! You do not need all these fonts! Wait while Mac strips out all his useless fonts.

j.) Select the fonts you want for your working disk from the right ("Fonts") side of the dialog box. Hold the shift key down as you select, so you can get everything you want on the first try.

If you will be using the LaserWriter for your finished work, you should use Helvetica 12 or Times 12. If you are going to be using a variety of font sizes, and you want them to show clearly on Mac's screen, then throw in the other font sizes, but the LaserWriter doesn't need more than one size of a given font! If you will be using the ImageWriter only, I recommend Geneva 9 through 24. (Because the ImageWriter does require all the different sizes.) Of course there are many other alternatives to consider. There are samples of each font in the Font Appendix in the back of this book.

When everything you want is highlighted, click <<Copy>> to install the selected fonts in Mac's system.
You may also want to remove desk accessories you will not need. Consider the following:

i. You must always have at least one desk accessory installed, or the system will crash.

ii. If you will be working with the AppleTalk network, or the LaserWriter, you will need Chooser and the Control Panel for sure.

iii. The Scrapbook and Art Grabber+ are quite useful for moving graphics (drawings) into written documents; but if this will be a data processing working disk, consider removing them.

iv. Key Caps is quite useful for quickly establishing which fonts are on your disk, and for previewing which key does what, on some of the most exotic fonts.

v. The Calculator and the Alarm Clock are sometimes useful for certain activities; but they can be a waste of disk space.

vi. Definitely remove the Puzzle, and Note Pad or any other strange desk accessories which happen to be there. (Some "home built" desk accessories cause unpredictable system crashes.)

k.) Click the Desk Accessory button. Click the Open button under the list on the right. When the dialog box appears, click "Desk Accessories" (you may have to click the little disk icon to find it) and click Open. A list of the desk accessories available in the "Desk Accessories" file will appear on the right. From the left-hand list, select the desk accessories you don't want. Click Copy. Click the Remove button. Wait. If there are any desk accessories you want on the right side, copy them over to the left (system) side. Click Quit.

l.) When you get back to the desktop, trash the Font/DA Mover. Click "ok". Close the system folder. Insert the System Tools again (eject the destination disk if necessary) Drag the "Fonts" and "Desk Accessories" icons back across to the System Tools window, so the fonts and desk accessories which you removed will be available if you want them another time. Eject the System Tools. Trash the remaining "Fonts" and "Desk accessories" icons which are still in the directory window of the destination disk. Empty the trash.

m.) Move the tab in the corner of the master disk so there is a hole you can see through:

![Hole Protected](image1)

![No hole. Unprotected](image2)

This way, the master is "locked" and it will be impossible to ruin it by accidentally copying the something onto it, or erasing it.
n.) Insert the master disk in the external drive. (Or eject the destination disk, and insert the master into the internal drive.) When the master's disk icon appears, open its directory window.

o.) Drag the icons for the applications you want into the directory window of the destination disk. Wait for them to be copied. (Exchange disks if you have to.) Then eject the master.

p.) If you want applications from more than one master on the same disk, repeat steps m.) through o.) until the disk is full, or you have the applications you want.

Your work disk is done. If it won't work, the master was probably copy protected. Masters are sometimes "copy protected" to prevent unscrupulous people from making additional copies and giving away (or selling !) applications to their friends. (Nevertheless, it is possible to copy "copy protected" disks, and I will show you how. It is legal to copy any disk you own as long as such copies are for your own use in only one machine at a time.) Old Microsoft versions of Word, Excel and File are examples of copy protected applications. New Microsoft applications, and MacPaint, MacWrite, ReadySetGo, and MacDraw are not copy protected.

5. To copy a copy protected master, you will need a copy of Copy II Hard Disk and an external disk drive. (If you want your working disk to be double-sided, the external drive must be an 800K drive. The 800K external drives are 2 inches high, and they say "800K" on the bottom; the 400K external drives are 3 inches high, and they don't say what "K" they are.)

   a.) Boot the System Tools disk in the internal drive.

   b.) Insert your new destination disk into the external disk drive. Erase/initialize your new disk to be Two-Sided, like it says in step 4.b.

   c.) "Lock" the master as shown in step 4. m.

   d.) Press [Shift]-[1] to eject System Tools, and insert a disk containing Copy II Hard Disk in the internal drive. Open the directory window, and boot Copy II Hard Disk. Read the copyright notice when it appears and click "ok".

   e.) Click the Eject Original button in the dialog box to eject the Copy II Hard Disk.

   f.) Insert the locked copy-protected master in the internal drive. Click Start Copy. Exchange disks as directed by Mac.

   g.) When the "Select Destination" dialog box appears, select the destination disk by clicking Drive until the name of your destination disk appears next to the little disk icon. Click Continue. Exchange disks as directed.
h.) When the copy is complete, pull down Control to Quit. Then pull down Special to Shut Down.

i.) Boot System Tools again. Reinsert your destination disk in the external drive. When the destination disk's icon appears, open its directory window. Except for the copy protected application, trash all icons that may have been copied into your destination disk.

j.) Follow the instructions for steps 4.c. through 4.l.
Here are a few ways to hurry up Mac:

1. **Keep your hands off the mouse** (Cost: $0). This is the most effective "hurry up" procedure there is for the Macintosh. However, like all truly effective procedures, some self-discipline is required.

The mouse is what makes the Mac so easy to learn in the first place; and in the beginning, it's fun. But when you're messing with the mouse, you ain't typing. When the mouse begins to get in the way of your work, it's time for the disciplined speed of **keyboard commands**.

Keyboard commands will help within almost every serious application, as well as the Macintosh system. But for applications such as Word, keyboard commands can do almost everything that the mouse can do. With such applications, you rarely have to take your hands off the keyboard unless you want to. Once you learn the keyboard commands, you no longer have to fumble for the mouse when the juices are flowing and you are on a roll.

Every time you see this symbol, ; it means you are to press the command key. Typically, when you use the command key, it is in conjunction with at least one other key. For example, -C means depress and hold the command key while you also press the letter C. (Even though the letters of a command may appear to be capitalized, do not use the shift unless **shift** is specified as part of the command.)

These first keyboard commands work, regardless of the application you are using. They are Mac's **universal keyboard commands**:

- **Copy...** -C Eject Internal Disk.......................... -shift-1
- **Paste.** -V Eject External Disk.......................... -shift-2
- **Cut.....** -X Save Active Window to MacPaint -shift-3
- **Undo...** -Z Print Active Window......................... -shift-4
- **Stop Execution of Last Command.** - (Command-period)
### Common Keyboard Commands:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Finder</th>
<th>Write</th>
<th>Word</th>
<th>Paint</th>
<th>Draw</th>
<th>RSQ</th>
<th>File</th>
<th>Excel</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Bold</td>
<td>-B</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>-B</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>-option-B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Close</td>
<td>-W</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>-W</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>-W</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Find</td>
<td>-F</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>-F</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>-F</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Go To</td>
<td>-G</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>-G</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>-G</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Italic</td>
<td>-I</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>-I</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>-option-I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>New</td>
<td>-N</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>-N</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>-N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Open</td>
<td>-O</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>-O</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>-option-O</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plain</td>
<td>-P</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>-P</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>-P</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Print</td>
<td>-P</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>-P</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>-P</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Quit</td>
<td>-Q</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>-Q</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>-Q</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Save</td>
<td>-S</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>-S</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>-S</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Select All</td>
<td>-A</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>-A</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>-A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Underline</td>
<td>-U</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>-U</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>-U</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Word-Processing Commands

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Write</th>
<th>Word</th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Align Left</td>
<td>-N</td>
<td></td>
<td>-shift-L</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Align Right</td>
<td>-R</td>
<td></td>
<td>-shift-R</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Align Center</td>
<td>-M</td>
<td></td>
<td>-shift-C</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Justify</td>
<td>-J</td>
<td></td>
<td>-shift-J</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Normal</td>
<td>-D</td>
<td></td>
<td>-shift-P</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Outline</td>
<td>-O</td>
<td></td>
<td>-shift-D</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ruler</td>
<td>-D</td>
<td></td>
<td>-R</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shadow</td>
<td>-S</td>
<td></td>
<td>-shift-N</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Subscript</td>
<td>-L</td>
<td></td>
<td>-shift- -</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Superscript</td>
<td>-H</td>
<td></td>
<td>-shift- +</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Data-Processing Commands:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Write</th>
<th>Word</th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Calculate Now</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>- =</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>- =</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Copy same field last line</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>- '</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>- '</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Date, print today's</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>- '</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>- '</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fill down</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>-D</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>-D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fill right</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>-R</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>-R</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Next Cell, selected area</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>-A</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>-A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Next Field</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>-A</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>-A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>One screen down</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>-Enter</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>-Enter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>One screen up</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>-Enter</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>-Enter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Previous Field</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>-Enter</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>-Enter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Same field, next line</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>-Enter</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>-Enter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Same Field, previous line</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>-Enter</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>-Enter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Time, print present</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>-Enter</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>-Enter</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Keyboard commands which are unique to Word alone:

#### Moving the Insertion Point
- One char left: Optn-[*]-K
- One char rt: Optn-[*]-L
- One word left: Optn-[*]-J
- One word rt: Optn-[*]-;
- One line up: Optn-[*]-O
- One line down: Optn-[*];
- New line, same line: Shift-return
- Page break: Shift-Enter
- New section: [*]-Enter

#### Scrolling Around
- One line up: Optn-[*]-
- One line down: Optn-[*]/
- Page up (back): Optn-[*]-P
- Page down: Optn-[*].

#### Dialog Box
- Next Option: [*]-Tab
- "Click": [*]-Spacebar
- Next Textbox: Tab

---

Hurry up Mac196
Word Spaces and Hyphens: etc.
Non-breaking sp between words -spbr
Non-breaking hyphen ~
Optional hyphen -

Some Word Selection Shortcuts
Within the Text
Sentence - click
Word Double click
Single Pt Click

In the Selection Bar
Document - click
Paragraph Double click
Line Click

Miscellaneous
Copy previous formatting Option- V, select previous, Return
Global change of given word H
0.5" Paragraph indent shift-F
Repaginate J
Nest shift-N
Unnest shift-M
Increase font size shift-
Decrease font size shift-
Change fonts shift-E; then type the font name

You can use the numeric keypad to move the insertion point around the screen without touching the mouse. If you press the Shift key at the same time, you can select text too!

Clear
Toggles keypad between edit & number

7 End of Line
+ = previous paragraph

8 Up

9 Up Screen
+ = beg. of document

0 sends cursor back to last place; also same as "click"

7 End of Line
+ = previous sentence

4 Left
+ = previous word

5 Down
+ = next word

6 Right
+ = next paragraph

3 Down Screen
+ = end of document

197 Hurry up Mac
You can open and close HFS folders by pressing the <button> button in conjunction with the up and down arrows. Also, you can switch the keypad to pull down menus. I think it may be possible to use Word without ever touching the mouse:

2. **Use only the font sizes which are installed on the disk** (Cost: $0).

For *Word* the installed font sizes are listed next to the available font list when you pull down **Character to Formats**. For *MacWrite* the installed font sizes are printed in **Outline style**, when you pull down the **Style** menu.

It is possible to select any font size you want by typing it in *Word's* font size selection box, or selecting it from *MacWrite's* **Style** menu; but it is not a good idea. When you tell Mac to use a font size which is not installed, Mac has to size each letter up or down from the existing font size every time you hit a key, and the process is time consuming. You'll find that Mac can only size odd fonts at the rate of about 10 words per minute. Not only that, but when you print your odd "MacCreated" font sizes on the ImageWriter they won't look as good as the installed sizes. (Any size of LaserWriter font looks good on the LaserWriter, however. So if you are using a LaserWriter, and you want to use an odd sized font; type it in an installed font size, then change the font size when you are done.)

3. **Don't let the disk drive stop** (Cost: $0).

When you boot the system, the disk drive hums and **stops**; then you boot an application, and the drive hums and **stops** again. When you're done, you quit the application, and the drive hums and **stops**. Finally you eject or shut down, and it hums and **stops** one last time. Every time the drive has to stop and start up again, valuable seconds are wasted. Once you are familiar with a particular disk's desktop and the applications on it, you know where the icons and menus are. With concentration it is possible to click on the right words and icons as they come up, but before the drive **stops**. Do it!

4. **Use the RAM Cache** ($0 if you have a Mac Plus).

The RAM Cache sets aside a designated amount of the RAM for storing frequently used program directions from your application. This way, whenever the directions are needed, Mac gets it out of the RAM, and not off the disk. The process is a lot faster. Of course the RAM Cache takes away memory that could be used for other things, so

Hurry up Mac!98
you may not want to use it with applications that require a large amount of memory.
But the RAM Cache does not have the risks of the RAMdisk because your latest work is
still stored on the disk each time you save. Only frequently used program directions of
the application and your unsaved work are in the RAM.

Here's how to use it:

a.) Boot Mac

b.) Pull down ⌘ to Control Panel.

c.) Click the "On" button for the RAM cache.

d.) Click on the up or down arrows to adjust the RAM cache size to be slightly
larger than the application you will be using, according to the following table:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Application</th>
<th>512K</th>
<th></th>
<th>Mac Plus</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Excel</td>
<td>304</td>
<td></td>
<td>380</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>File</td>
<td>160</td>
<td></td>
<td>224</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MacDraw</td>
<td>160</td>
<td></td>
<td>224</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MacPaint</td>
<td>184</td>
<td></td>
<td>184</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MacWrite</td>
<td>160</td>
<td></td>
<td>224</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ReadySetGo</td>
<td>256</td>
<td></td>
<td>256</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SuperPaint</td>
<td>432</td>
<td></td>
<td>432</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Word</td>
<td>256</td>
<td></td>
<td>416</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

d.) Click the close box.

If you don't like the Mac Plus RAM Cache, a better one called TurboCharger 2.0 is
made by Nevins Microsystems.

Caution: Be careful to use only one RAM Cache at a time (a RAM cache is built into the HyperDrive.); and
avoid using the RAM Cache with Switcher. If you disregard this Caution, your system will crash!!

5. Use a RAM disk (Cost: $23; but you need at least 512K of memory).

If you like to play fast and loose, this is the most cost effective purchase you can make
for the Mac. The RAM disk tricks Mac into thinking that part of his 512K (or 1028K) RAM is
really a disk drive; and since access to RAM is practically instantaneous, Mac can
use his RAM disk with lightning speed. The RAM disk is ideal for situations where
you are frequently stuck waiting for Mac to use the disk drive. However, the catch is
that you can lose your work. With the RAM disk, your work is stored in RAM (a tempo­
rary electronic memory), instead of on a real disk (which is more or less permanent). If
the electricity goes off, or something erases the RAM, your work will disappear forever.

The RAM disk memory is limited to 316K in a 512K Mac, or 828K in the Mac Plus.
Mac needs the other 196K to do the things he normally does with his RAM. So you
may need to do some planning in creating your RAM disk. If you're using a Mac 512,
you may want to include only the applications, desk accessories, fonts, and files which are absolutely necessary to your work while you are using the RAM disk. If you will be using File for instance, you will need only File, one desk accessory, say Control Panel, the minimum system fonts (Chicago 12, Geneva 9 &12, and Monaco 9), the System, the Finder, and the file with which you will be working.

Here's how to use the RAM disk:

a.) Drag the RAM disk application icon onto a disk containing the other applications, desk accessories, fonts, and files you which you intend to use. It's okay if there are other things you don't intend to use (like the ImageWriter driver) on the disk too; you just don't want to load them on the RAM disk.

b.) Boot the RAM disk application. After about 5 seconds you'll get a dialog box. Click the "Create Temporary Disk" box. Click "ok."

c.) You'll get another dialog box. This one controls the RAM disk memory. Click and drag the six-sided figure, which at first contains the number "35K," up to the 316K (or 828K) mark. Click "ok."

d.) Mac will take you back to the desktop, which looks pretty much the same as before, except that now you have a second disk icon, the RAM disk, on the right side of your desktop, below your startup disk icon. Open the RAM disk icon (not the RAM disk application icon!). It should be empty.

e.) Hold the shift key down while you click on all the icons to be loaded onto the RAM disk. Do not click on anything you don't need; and especially don't click on the RAM disk or the ImageWriter. Drag everything you have selected, in one group, onto the RAM disk.

f.) Now boot an application which is loaded on the RAM disk. (When you boot an application, the disk holding that application becomes the startup disk.) Play with the application for a while if you want. Then pull down File to Quit. You should already notice a remarkable increase in speed.

g.) Eject the disk that was the startup disk, but has now been relegated to second place. This isn't mandatory, but if the disk is in there, Mac will want to talk to it, and this will slow things down.

h.) Boot your application again. This time the air should all but crackle as you fly into your application. Do whatever it is you have to do with the application. You should notice a vast improvement.

Warning: When you are done, be sure you drag whatever you want to save over onto a real disk; otherwise when you shut the system down, it will be gone forever!!!
6. **Use the Switcher** (Cost: $0)

If you have to move quickly from one application to another, *Switcher* is for you. There is a complete set of instructions for using *Switcher* in the "Integrating Applications" Chapter.

7. **Use the Minifinder, Set Startup, or "File to Open"** (Cost: $0).

They won't work for everyone, and the first two suggestions may not be a good idea for anyone. But you really should try each of them out, in your particular situation, and see.

a.) To install the *Minifinder*, select (shift-click) the applications and files you want to include in the minifinder (they must all be visible on the desktop); then pull down **Special** to **Use Minifinder**.... When the dialog box appears, click **Install**. From now on, until you click on the Finder button, return to the desk top, and turn the minifinder off, you will see the Minifinder instead of the desktop whenever you boot the system or quit an application. **Personally I hate it.**

The minifinder has icons; and you use them them same way you've been using the icons on the regular Mac desktop. It is slightly faster, but there are two problems:

i.) When you create a new file, you have to go back to the finder in order to install it in the minifinder; so if you create new files frequently, the minifinder may end up requiring more of your time than the finder.

ii.) The minifinder does not keep you as well informed as the finder, about what is happening on the desktop with regard to the accumulation of files and the amounts of disk space involved. Such a lack of information may cause you to lose part of your work when the machine or disk runs out of memory.

b.) **Set startup** takes you straight into a previously selected document or application whenever you boot the system. It allows you to skip the finder completely; in fact you can even trash the finder if you need the space. If you always use one and only one application when you use a particular disk, set startup can save you lots of fooling around on the desktop. But like the Minifinder it keeps you in ignorance about what is happening on the desktop; and one day, without warning, you may suddenly run out of disk space.

To use **Set Startup**:

i.) Open the directory window.

ii.) Select (click on) the application that you want to have open whenever you boot the disk.
iii.) Pull down Special to Set Startup.

The next time you boot the system with this disk, you'll go immediately into the application you have selected. If you tried Set Startup and you didn't like it:

i.) Quit the application

ii.) Select the Finder.

iii.) Pull down Special to Set Startup.

c.) File to Open, can take you straight from one document to any other document prepared with the same application, without going back to the finder: Pull down File to Open, select the document you want from the list in the dialog box, and click "open." If it's on a different disk and in the other drive, click the "drive" button. (Or if you have no external drive, click eject and insert the other disk; then select the document you want and click "open." ) Do not use "eject" as a shortcut for quitting, however. If you do, you will accumulate strange documents on your desktop, and your disk will eventually "crash."


If you have done the "How to Copy" Chapter, and worked other parts of the book already, you can see the advantages of this:

a.) When you make copies, you can insert both the source and destination disks at the same time; which cuts the disk swapping down to zero.

b.) You can keep your applications (working disks) and your files (data disks) on separate disks. This allows you to organize your disks better; and it allows you to create huge documents which are limited only by the disk's capacity.

9. Upgrade to a Mac Plus (Cost:$895) or 512 Extended (Cost:$299).

The Apple Macintosh was introduced to the world in January of 1984. It loaded its programs too slowly and it ran out of memory frequently. The first little Mac is known in polite company today as the Mac 128. But by fall of that year, the Mac 512 was available. Because it had 512K RAM, it ran out of memory less often.

The numbers 512 and 128 refer to a random access memory (RAM) that the Mac has only when it is turned on. The RAM's data storage capabilities are different than the data storage capabilities of a 3.5" disk or a hard disc. 3.5" discs are much cheaper, they can retain their memories when the machine is turned off; they can be removed from the machine; and potentially they have a much larger capacity. Unfortunately, it

Hurry up Mac202
is many times more time-consuming to get at the memories in a disk. The RAM's memory is electronic: Mac can get to it "instantly". Unfortunately, when the power goes off, the RAM is gone "instantly".

A 512K Mac has four times as much RAM as a 128K Mac. It can hold more of a file or application in its RAM at one time. A 512K Mac can hold all the data of a 400K 3.5" disk in its electronic memory at once. This has two big advantages:

a.) When a 512K Mac makes a copy, it only needs one "look" at the source disk, which greatly decreases the potential number of disk swaps.

b.) More of an application and any related files can be held in the RAM, making disk accessing less frequent. That is, you don't have to stop and listen to the disk drive hum while you are wrapped up in your work.

But Mac's graphics and page processing capabilities; and its many beautiful fonts and applications require huge amounts of memory storage. The 400K internal disc drive is still not adequate, the 512K Mac still runs out of memory from time to time; and it continues to load its programs too slowly. Thus the Mac Plus and the Mac 512 Enhanced have appeared.

The 512 Enhanced and the Mac Plus both have a 128K ROM (instead of 64K) which allows the programs to load and operate much more quickly; and they both have double-sided disk drives which essentially double the disk memory storage capacity to 800K. But in addition to these features, the Mac Plus has 1028K (a full megabyte) of RAM (giving it eight times the memory of the Mac 128!), and a SCSI port which allows one to connect it to a fast external hard disk.

10. Install a SCSI-port ed Hard Disk ($795 and up).

A SCSI-port ed Hard Disk is essentially the same as the HyperDrive, except that it plugs into the SCSI port in the back of the Mac Plus, and thus will work only with a Mac Plus. It is not mounted internally, and is therefore a separate box that must be moved whenever the Mac is moved.

Your Mac will not be very portable if you want to use any hard disk drive other than an internally mounted drive. If you elect not to use the hard disk drive when you travel, you will have to take along all the little microfloppies and your external 3.5" drive; you will probably have some software/computer file organization problems, and you may begin to wonder to yourself why you bought the other (cheaper) hard disk drive.

The SCSI-port ed or any other hard disk drive will have the big capacity advantage we already discussed. But any hard disk drive may have that potential problem in loading or running your favorite applications too. So you probably should attempt to load your favorite applications and try them out in the HyperDrive before you buy it.
11. **Install a HyperDrive or Other Internally Mounted Hard Disk** (Cost: $995 to $3195).

The HyperDrive (or other internally mounted hard disk) is a huge data storage device installed inside the Mac, wired directly to the microprocessor (Mac's brain); it doesn't have to communicate with the Mac through an external, serial port. (Serial ports only pass one bit of information at a time, so they can slow things down occasionally.) The HyperDrive stores its data on a hard disk which spins many times faster than the regular Macintosh 3.5" disk.

A HyperDrive can store 20,000 K of memories; a double-sided 3.5" disk, 800K. Thus, the HyperDrive can store 25 times as much data. This means that a typical Mac user may be able to continuously store most regularly used applications and documents on the single HyperDrive hard disk inside the Mac. With a HyperDrive, it is only necessary to fumble with the little disks when you load an application for the first time, or when you are making a backup copy of your work. Because the HyperDrive gives you a total of two internal drives (the HyperDrive and the 3.5"internal), no external disk drive will be required. When you travel with the, you need carry only your backup disks, and there is no need for an external drive. Thus, the Mac can be more portable and have a much larger memory at the same time.

Sometimes there are problems when one tries to load copy protected applications such as *Word* into a hard disk like HyperDrive. *Copy II Hard Disk* can usually solve the problem. Also, some applications such as *Switcher* will not run reliably in the HyperDrive; so the caution still applies: "load and try before you buy."

Here are some speed comparisons for some of the "hurry up" alternatives. The "Boot System" times are how long it takes the desktop to appear from the time the machine is turned on. The "Boot 65K MacWrite" times are how long it takes a big (65K) MacWrite file to load, from the time its icon is double-clicked. The Exit times are how long it take to get back to the desktop from the time you pull down **File to Quit**:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Program Operation</th>
<th>Old Mac 128</th>
<th>Mac Plus</th>
<th>HyperDrive 20</th>
<th>Paradise Mac10</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Boot System</td>
<td>21 seconds</td>
<td>18 seconds</td>
<td>16 seconds</td>
<td>49 seconds</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Boot 65K MacWrite</td>
<td>27 seconds</td>
<td>13 seconds</td>
<td>8 seconds</td>
<td>19 seconds</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exit 65K MacWrite</td>
<td>20 seconds</td>
<td>9 seconds</td>
<td>4 seconds</td>
<td>16 seconds</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The Paradise is an externally connected, non-SCSI ($795) hard disc that performs rather well. The HyperDrive and Paradise times are much better if the hard disks are connected to a Mac Plus.
If you need to put words and pictures together, you need to move from one application to another; you need to Integrate your applications. For example, Word does not stand alone. To use it well, you must prepare graphics in Thunderscan, MacDraw, SuperPaint, Excel, or MacPaint; and you may need to move back and forth between several of these applications and the desktop. There are always at least two, and sometimes as many as four pathways between any two applications. The pathways are the Clipboard, the Scrapbook, File to Open... (or Get Text or Get Picture), Art Grabber+, and Switcher. Each of them has its own little set of hazards and virtues. You need to be able to pick the shortest, safest path between any two applications. That’s what this chapter is about.

This time I'm assuming that you have done at least some word processing with either MacWrite or Word, and some graphics work with MacDraw or MacPaint. If you have not, you need to go back to the applications chapters, and learn something about word processing and graphics first.

1. By now you have probably learned that Cut (or Copy) and Paste are among the most powerful of word processor commands. When you use these commands, you are using the Clipboard. When you select a piece of whatever you are working on, and pull down Edit to Cut (or Copy), you are putting that piece into a special section of Mac's RAM (temporary electronic memory) called the clipboard. Mac holds that piece in his RAM as long as he is turned on, as long as you stay in that application, and as long as you don't Cut (or Copy) anything else. When you click an insertion point, and pull down Edit to Paste, Mac dumps whatever is in his clipboard memory out onto the lines after that insertion point.

You can also use the clipboard to Cut (or Copy) and Paste between different applications as long as you stay on the same startup disk. "Staying on the same startup disk" means that the applications must all be on the same disk, or if they are on different disks, one of the disks must not have a system file on it. You see, the clipboard is kept in the system file, and if both disks have system files, when you open the other application on the other disk, you will have "changed" clipboards; and what you Cut (or) Copied into one system's clipboard memory, will not be there in the other memory.

1 However, if you are using Switcher, you must press the Option button as you travel between applications.
2. The scrapbook also works to Cut (or Copy) and Paste between applications. It is not as fast, because there are many more steps involved; but the scrapbook does have some real advantages, which we will discuss in a minute. To use the scrapbook:

a.) Select whatever you want to transfer; and Cut (or Copy) it.

b.) Pull down ⌘ to Scrapbook, and when the scrapbook window opens, Paste your item. Click the close box.

c.) Do whatever else you want to do. You can use the clipboard, quit for the day, or take a vacation. What you paste in the scrapbook is safely stored on the disk, it will not disappear when the power goes off, like things which are stored in the clipboard.

d.) When you are ready to paste the item you put in the scrapbook, pull down ⌘ to Scrapbook; and when the scrapbook appears, page through it, using the scroll bar below its window, until you find your item.

e.) Cut (or Copy) the item from the scrapbook. Click the close box.

f.) Click where you want it pasted, and Paste.

As with the clipboard, you should probably stay on the same startup disk when you are using the scrapbook. However, there is a way to move your scrapbook onto a different startup disk. Here's how:

a.) Open the directory window of the startup disk containing the scrapbook you want to use. On the same desktop, open the directory window of the disk you want to use as a startup disk. Resize the directory windows so you can see both of them.

b.) Change the name of the scrapbook file you want to use. Any other name will do; the name is strictly temporary.

c.) Move (copy) the scrapbook file you want to use onto the directory of the startup disk you want to use.

d.) If you want to save the other scrapbook, change its name to something memorable. If you don't want it, trash it.

e.) Change the temporary name of the scrapbook file you want to use back to "Scrapbook File."
In steps 1 and 2, you have seen that you can move any selected item into either the clipboard or the scrapbook; change applications; and paste that item into your new application:

Unfortunately, the size of anything you select in *MacPaint* is limited to the size of the *MacPaint* window; and anything you paste into *MacPaint* will be crudely "trimmed" to "fit" into the window, and probably ruined if the drawing is larger than the window. (However there is a way around this problem, which we will discuss later in the chapter.) This is a limitation of *MacPaint* only; this window "trim to fit" limit does not apply to the scrapbook or *Art Grabber+* even though they also have windows.

Unfortunately, when you **Cut** and **Paste** from either word processor into anything else, including another word processor, the fancy fonts disappear. The only way to keep the fonts, font sizes, and styles you select in a word processor, is to stay in that word processor.

Here is a summary of the virtues and limitations of the clipboard and the scrapbook.

**Clipboard**
- Only one cut (copy) can be stored in the Clipboard. If you forget and do another cut before you have pasted the first one, you will wipe it out.
- Lost easily. Stored in RAM.

**Scrapbook**
- Many different copies can be stored, with one copy on each scrapbook page.
- No chance of wiping copies out by making cuts before you use what's in your scrapbook.
- Safe. Stored on disk.
3. But you don’t always need the clipboard or scrapbook. In certain cases, it is sufficient to Save, then pull down File to Open..., or (in RSG) Get Text or Get Picture.

If you are working within MacWrite, and you want to get at a different story that you Saved at another time, Save. Pull down File to Close. Then pull down File to Open. When the dialog box appears, double click on the story you want to open. You may have to open a folder by double clicking on it, or you may have to click the “drive” or “eject” button to look at the list on a different disk.

If you are working within Word, everything is the same as MacWrite, except that you don’t have to pull down File to Close. You don’t have to Close because Word can have many windows open at once, which is a real help for working between Word documents.

Once you have Saved your document prepared in MacPaint, MacDraw, MacWrite, or Word, it is safely stored on the disk; and there will be a little file icon in the disk directory that stands for it. If you examine the file icons carefully, you can tell the difference between the files:

If you are working within ReadySetGo,

you select the destination text block with the I-beam tool, then pull down File to Get Text, to open the Word or MacWrite document which contains your story. The same old dialog box will appear, and it will work the same way that it does in MacWrite. Just double click on the story you want. The dialog box should disappear, and your selected text block should fill with text.

OR

you select the destination picture block with the cropper tool, then pull down File to Get Picture, to open the MacPaint or MacDraw document which contains your picture. The same old dialog box will appear, and it will work the same way that it does in MacWrite. Just double click on the title of the picture you want. The dialog box should disappear, and your selected picture block should fill with a picture.
4. *Art Grabber+* is an amazingly clever device which allows you to import *MacPaint* documents in much the same way as we were importing word processing documents in the last paragraph. *Art Grabber+* allows you to "grab" any rectangular piece you want out of any *MacPaint* document stored on disk, while you are working within *ReadySetGo, MacWrite*, *Word*, or *MacDraw*. Here's how:

a.) Pull down ☐ to *Art Grabber+*. The word "*Grabber+*" will appear on the menu bar, and the *Art Grabber* window will appear.

b.) Pull down *Grabber+* to Open. A dialog box with a list of *MacPaint* documents in it should appear. Double click the one you want. As usual, you may have to open folders, click on "drive", etc.

c.) When your desired *MacPaint* document opens, click and drag the "+" mouse pointer from the upper left corner to the lower right corner of the part of the *MacPaint* document you want to use. Pull down *Edit* to *Copy*. Click the close box of the *Art Grabber+* window.

d.) Click where you want your selected part of the *MacPaint* document to be. Pull down *Edit* to *Paste*.

You can create full page *MacPaint* documents in any of three ways:

a.) you can press ⌘-shift-3 and make a *MacPaint* picture of whatever happens to be on Mac's computer screen anytime you want.

b.) you can pull down *File* to *Save as Paint Doc*...while you are working within *Thunderscan*.

c.) you can draw your own *MacPaint* document while working in *MacPaint*.

However, if you try to Cut and Paste your magnificent full page document from *MacPaint* into the scrapbook or anything else, idiot *MacPaint* will clip off anything that
isn't actually showing in the *MacPaint* window at the time. *Art Grabber+* does two truly great things:

a.) It allows you to select as much as you want of your full page *MacPaint* documents.

b.) It allows you to "grab" any rectangular piece you want out of any *MacPaint* document you have stored on disk while you are working within *ReadySetGo, MacWrite, Word*, or *MacDraw*.

5. *Art Grabber+* is wonderful. But by far the most spectacular device for integrating applications is *Switcher*. You can "rotate" from one application to another in less than a second while you are using *Switcher*. And if you hold the option key down while you "rotate" between applications you can carry the contents of the clipboard with you!

Here's how to use *Switcher*.

a.) Find a working disk with *Switcher 5.1* (or better) and some applications you want to use on it. You may have to study "*How to Copy*" to prepare such a disk. Turn on the Mac, and insert the disk.

Caution: If you are going to use switcher, you must turn any RAM disk caching systems off or the system will eventually crash. To turn off the Mac Plus RAM Cache, pull down ⌘ to Control Panel, and click the RAM Cache off button.

Double click the disk icon to open the directory window, then double click the *Switcher* application icon. When *Switcher* opens, the menu should look something like this:

```
apple File Edit Switcher.
```

*Integrating Applications* 210
b.) Pull down Switcher to Configure then Install... A dialog box listing the applications on your disk will appear. You may need to open a folder, or click the "drive" button to find the applications you want.

c.) Double click the first application you want to use with Switcher. A Configuration box will appear. You will need specify the amount of memory you want Switcher to set aside for your first application. I suggest the amounts of memory specified in the Preferred column for the following applications:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Application</th>
<th>Preferred</th>
<th>Minimum</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Excel</td>
<td>512K</td>
<td>256K</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>File</td>
<td>288K</td>
<td>128K</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Finder</td>
<td>192K</td>
<td>96K</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MacDraw</td>
<td>200K</td>
<td>128K</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MacPaint</td>
<td>178K</td>
<td>178K</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MacWrite</td>
<td>128K</td>
<td>200K</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ReadySetGo</td>
<td>320K</td>
<td>320K</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SuperPaint</td>
<td>432K</td>
<td>432K</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Thunderscan</td>
<td>256K</td>
<td>128K</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Word</td>
<td>416K</td>
<td>256K</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Do not plan to use more memory than your machine has. If you are using a 512K machine, you may want to try lesser amounts of memory, and you will not be able to use more than two applications in Switcher at once. You can avoid using an extra 22K per application by clicking a "Ø" into the little Mac screens next to the names of each installed application on the Switcher main screen.

Click an "X" into Save Screen box. Click "Permanent." The Configuration box will go away.

d.) Click once on the next "?” application icon on the Switcher main screen. Pull down Switcher to Configure then Install...again. Repeat steps b and c until you have installed all the applications you intend to use or have memory for. If you are not using Word, install the Finder as well. It makes things a whole lot safer and easier.
Clicking either point of this little symbol will rotate you thru the applications. Clicking the center takes you back to Switcher.

This means the screen will not be "saved" and Switcher will be slower but it will save 22K!

MacPaint
178K

These applications have already been installed in this Switcher set.

Microsoft Word
256K

This is the amount of memory assigned to each application

Finder
192K

Select this icon by clicking it once, then pull down Switcher to Configure then install another new application

Double-click here
(Do not do this.)

e.) Pull down Switcher to Options. "Unclick" all of the "X's" in the option boxes; you do not want any of the options. (They make Switcher even more dangerous than it already is.) Click "ok."

f.) Type [Control]-shift-. One of the applications you selected should open. There may be noise from the disk drive, and a tendency to go back to Switcher's main screen at first, but keep typing [Control]-shift-. Eventually, you should be rotating smoothly between the applications you selected.

You can open any document stored on disk from within applications mounted in Switcher: Just do it as I explained in step 3 above. You can use the clipboard and scrapbook and Art Grabber as you normally would; except that you must hold down the option key if you want to carry along the clipboard when you change applications.

g.) To return to the Switcher main screen, type [Control]-shift-

h.) Pull down Ṃ to About the Switcher.... There's a some more good information there. Click anywhere in the screen to make it go away.

i.) After you've used your particular combination of applications in Switcher for a while, you may decide you want to save this combination, and make it easier to install the next time. If this is the case pull down File to Save Set. A dialog box will appear. Name your Switcher application set. Click "save". The next time you want to use Switcher, there will be a a Switcher file icon with the
name you selected on it. When you double click that icon, Switcher will start up and install your combination of applications automatically.

*Switcher* is unquestionably dangerous. That's one reason I suggested installing the Finder (unless you are using *Word* II). It allows you to keep track of anything strange that may be going on, like the appearance of mysterious icons that take up huge amounts of memory. If this happens, or your applications begin to behave strangely, quit from *Switcher*, clean things up, and start over. If you don't, the disk will "crash" and you'll lose everything.

The other reason for installing the Finder in *Switcher* (unless you are using *Word* II), is that it allows you to update your backup disks or otherwise "putter around" with the desktop, while you are working in *Switcher*. (Don't try to throw away files that have been opened while in *Switcher* however.)

To quit from *Switcher*, quit from each application first, Saving as necessary. Then pull down *Switcher's* File to Quit.
How to Prevent Them:

1. **Save** every time you get up from working at the Mac; at least every ten minutes whether you get up or not. If the power goes off, you will only lose 10 minutes of work at most.

2. **Make backup copies** on separate disks, of everything you value. Make it a practice to backup large documents before you print them; and for sure at the end of every day. This way you’re less likely to forget. Not many experiences can match the sickening sensation of discovering that a one-of-a-kind data disk containing documents representing hundreds of hours of your work has "crashed." It has happened to me. Twice. I now make two backup copies of the stuff I value. Incidentally, after a disk “crashes,” don’t use your backup disk until you figure out what happened to the first disk. Otherwise you may get to see not one, folks, but two, count’em; two disk crashes in a row.

3. **Get your hands off of both the mouse and the keyboard**, at the very first indication that something has gone wrong. Do not press so much as a single key! Do not push the mouse button even once! Don’t do anything until you have analyzed the situation. The **Undo** command has the power to undo the effect of the last keystroke. It will not undo the effect of the last two keystrokes. Also, other malfunctions can be aggravated by frantic punching at the keyboard. When Mac tells you he doesn't have room to save or print etc., and the system seems to be locked-up; things are really not as bad as they seem. With patience, you can frequently solve the problem.

4. **Think before, during, and after you delete.**

   a.) When you delete by selecting, and then typing whatever is to replace the selected material; or when you delete by backspacing, or pulling down **Edit to Clear** selected material, the text deleted in this manner is not saved to the clipboard. You can get it back with **Undo**. However, as soon as you type even one keystroke, that option is gone for good.

   b.) When you delete by pulling down **Edit to Cut**, that material will be saved to the clipboard. But even then it is not secure, because the clipboard will only hold one thing at a time; and the next thing that is **Cut** to the clipboard will erase what was already there. So if you want to save what you **Cut**, you should follow your **Cut** immediately with a **Paste**; even if you just stick it temporarily at the end of your document.
c.) Pulling down Search to Change can destroy your document. For example, imagine what would happen if you used this feature to ask Word to find every instance of "the" and delete it (by leaving the "Change To" box blank). Once every "the" sequence of letters is removed from a document, there is no way to "find" all the empty spaces and put "the" or anything else back.

5. Consider locking certain disks and files. It is possible to "lock" a disk so that it cannot be altered, even though its contents can be viewed on the computer screen. To do this, move the tab in the corner of the disk so there is a hole you can see through:

If you lock Word or File you will not be able to do anything with them except look at them. The time to lock a disk is when you plan to copy it, so you don't accidentally copy the blank onto the master. Or you might want to lock up a spreadsheet that is going to be passed around, but is not going to be altered any more. If a disk is locked, a little padlock will appear just below the close box of the directory window. If you try to change anything on it, Mac will patiently tell you that the disk is locked.

Unfortunately, Mac has another, different, "locking" feature which is practically worthless, but can be a real pain in your serial port. To use it, select the application, document, or file you want "locked"; then pull down File to Get Info. Click in the box next to "Locked."

"Locking" a file in this manner means that it can't be trashed, and the title can't be changed; however it can be altered by the normal editing process; and the entire disk can be erased, no problem. Sometimes when you are trying to trash several documents in a hurry, it can be rather aggravating to repeatedly encounter "That item is locked, and can't be removed." To quickly establish which icons have been locked, select an icon, and move the mouse pointer into the title. If the pointer changes to an "I" beam, the title can be edited and the icon isn't "locked." If the pointer remains a pointer, when it is dragged across the title, then the icon is locked, and you must open Get Info to unlock it. If you are using text instead of icons in your directory window, a little padlock appears to the right of each document or application which has been locked with Get Info.

6. Keep everything Spartan, well organized, and clearly labeled.

a.) Pay attention to your desktop. View unusual and unexpected documents with suspicion. MacPaint and Word both create these sorts of strange documents when the wrong shutdown procedure is used. Word also does it when the "make backup" feature is used improperly. The presence of such documents may be a warning; if you are shutting things down incorrectly, you may
one day lose an important document. Try to figure out where the weird doc­
ments are coming from, and as soon as you know they are not important, get rid
of them. The space they take up may cause you to run out of space at an un-
expected and inopportune moment.

b.) Label your disks clearly. Here's how: First, boot the system. If the icons
whose names you want on the label are in a folder, open the folder. If you want
the icons listed by name, pull down View to By Name; otherwise your label
will show the icons themselves. Second, pull down File to Print Catalog.
After it prints, trim it to proper size, and glue your newly printed label to the disk;
or better, print the label on Avery S-2448 or S4848 gummed labels.

c.) Keep your icon names short and in lower case: pull down File to Get Info,
and use the space at the bottom of the Get Info box, if you want to describe the
contents of the file; but don't try to describe the contents in the label.

i.) If an icon name is inadvertently destroyed, do not touch the mouse or
the keyboard, except as follows: First, select whatever is left of the ru-
ined file name. Second, press backspace. Third, click on the grey (non-
window) part of the screen. And lo, the old icon name will return!

ii.) If you must have long file names, and you can't read them because
they get in each other's way; just click on the icon of interest to highlight
it. You'll be able to read it just fine.

iii.) If you pick a file name identical to a disk name, Mac will tell you, "That
name has been taken, please pick another name." But a file name can
incorporate a disk name, if you want to be sure that the file will be saved
to a particular disk. When you label a file, just type a colon between the
disk name and the file name like this: MacBook:MacDisasters.

d.) Keep related files in one file folder, and label the folder accordingly. (You
can get empty file folders by pulling down File to New Folder.) Keep all files
for a given application on one disk. If you have an external disk drive, you can
keep nothing but documents on the disk. (A disk without applications or system
files is called a data disk.)

7. Take good care of Mac, his disk drives, and printers.

a.) Momentary increases in line voltage can completely disable a LaserWriter,
and damage Mac over a period of time. Even though he seems to be working
just fine; minor damage due to small, repeated voltage surges can be accumu-
lating in his power supply; and one day he may abruptly quit. I've seen it hap-
pen to two Commodore 64's and an Apple II. Incidentally, the voltage surges
may also affect software, documents, print quality, and ImageWriter health as
well.
Prevent damage from voltage surges. Use these precautions:

i.) Do not plug Mac or his printer into the same circuit with devices which contain large electric motors, such as refrigerators, garage door openers, power saws, vacuum cleaners, etc. They sometimes create voltage surges when they are turned off.

ii.) Buy surge protectors and use them. Radio Shack's are sufficient.

iii.) Make sure the third ground outlet connection for Mac and his printer is functioning. Hardware stores such as Ernst have outlet checking devices for about $3 which will do this. Do not ever plug Mac into a two prong outlet, or use an adapter to do this. Do not ever use a two wire extension cord for Mac or his printer.

iv.) Eject disks before you turn Mac off; do not insert disks before you turn Mac on. The voltage surges can damage them, and wipe out your work.

v.) The external disk drive can be easily damaged by surges of the static electricity generated by such simple activities as walking on a carpet. Therefore, keep an antistatic bag over the end of the external disk drive connector, when it is not connected. Ground yourself, by touching a grounded metal surface, before you connect the external drive. Do not ever touch the little pins on the end of the external disk drive connector.

vi.) It cost me $175 to learn that you do not ever connect or disconnect a computer, printer, or any other peripheral while it is turned on. If you do this, there is a chance of burning out the printer logic board.

vii.) Do not turn Mac on and off needlessly. The repeated surges of electricity, even at proper line voltage, through a cold circuit can do damage over a period of time. Use the Shut Down feature, or install the reset button and use that to recycle the machine; but don't turn the Mac's power off and on more than once or twice each day. If you are quitting, but you will be returning to the Mac later during your workday, leave Mac on, with the screen brightness turned low.

b.) On the other hand, Apple suggests using your Mac for a night light. Since the life of a cathode ray tube is finite, and since your Mac's screen is, after all, the front end of a cathode ray tube, it is probably a dumb idea to use Mac as a $1500 night light. If you do intend to leave Mac on for an extended period, turn down the brightness.

c.) Keep Mac away from heat. Make sure he can "breathe." Keep other objects, walls, shelves, etc. at least an inch away from the vented areas in the sides and the top. Especially, do not allow the external disk drive to block the vents on the left side. This is where the power supply is, and it must be able to cool efficiently. Old Mac 128's which have been upgraded to a Mac Plus have an inadequate power supply (analog board). The analog board may quite li-
erally go up in smoke unless you add a cooling fan. Many types are available from various mail order houses.

d.) Mac and his disks can also be damaged by dirt, dust, fumes, and sunlight. Use good sense in this regard.

e.) To clean the case, spray a mild household detergent cleaner, such as 409 or Fantastik, onto a damp, lint free cloth; and wipe the Mac off with the cloth. Don't spray the machine directly. Don't use glass cleaner on the screen; it will remove the anti-glare coating. Treat the screen like a fine camera lens.

f.) Your dealer and(or) Nortonics (8101 10th Ave N., Minneapolis, 55427) have head cleaning kits for your Mac disk drives. Get one and use it every six months.

8. Do not use more than one RAM caching system at a time. Do not use a RAM cache in combination with Switcher. When you use more than one of these utilities at a time, they somehow "feed" on each other, and after a period of several hours, they will cause the system to crash violently. I have had more than one of these crashes destroy the disk at the same time. The Mac Plus and the HyperDrive both come with their own built-in RAM cache; and the Nevins company make a third RAM cache called the TurboCharger that is superior to either of the first two. Turn off the Mac Plus RAM cache at the Control Panel, and leave it off. If you have a HyperDrive, Double click on the HyperDrive manager icon, then pull down to Options to turn off the HyperDrive RAM cache.

What to Do When MacDisasters Happen:

9. Aaaack! Insufficient disk space! I tried to warn you that this would happen! That's why "How to Copy" suggests stripping your disks down to the essentials, with only the fonts and desk accessories you really need. But now that it's happened anyway, what are we going to do?

a.) First, stay cool. You are not in trouble yet, but thoughtless punching of the keyboard or the mouse will get you in trouble for sure. There is a way out.

b.) Second, stay cool and find a formatted disk with lots of room. (A formatted disk is a disk that has been successfully inserted in the Mac, and erased or formatted at some time in the past. Don't try to use a brand new blank disk. It has not been formatted.)

c.) Third, click "ok" to get rid of the bad news box.

d.) Fourth, pull down File to Save As...
e.) **Fifth,** when the dialog box appears make an empty slot for your roomy disc (if you don't have an empty slot already). Click the **Eject** button in the dialog box.

f.) **Sixth,** insert the roomy disk, click on the **Drive** button till the roomy disc's name appears next to the little disc icon, then click the **Save** button. Wait. Now your document is safe on another disk.

Here are a few other ideas to consider when you run out of room while working within an application:

i.) **"Save As..."** your work in the name of another known file on the same disk which you no longer want; this effectively deletes the old file, and replaces it with your current, more valuable one.

ii.) "Empty" the clipboard by deliberately "copying" a period, or something else very small. This will give you whatever space the clipboard was occupying.

If you can get back to the desktop safely, there are a some other last ditch methods for squeezing out a little more space:

i.) **First,** select the document you are working in, and pull down **Special to Set Startup;** then pull down **Special to Shut Down.** **Second,** boot Mac with another disk. **Eject.** **Third,** insert the first (Set Startup) disk; and throw out its finder. This is drastic surgery, and not normally recommended; but it does get you another 56K of disk space. The catch is that you don't have a desktop anymore; but as long as you don't need anything except the document in "set startup," there should be no problem. Whenever you want to shut down your newly revised disk, save and pull down **File to Close,** then eject using `Shift-1`.

ii.) Consider throwing out the printer icons. You can always drag in new ones later. **MacPaint** never needs an ImageWriter; even if you intend to print. (Of course, if you don't intend to print, nothing needs a printer!) Throwing out the ImageWriter icon will give you another 31K. (The LaserWriter and LaserPrep icons take up even more space than the ImageWriter.)

iii.) Consider throwing out any applications you aren't using. You can always drag in new ones later. After all, this is one reason for using a work disk, and not the master. (Don't be quite so quick to trash "copy-protected" applications; they are not quite as easy to replace.)

iv.) You can get another 2-10K by wiping out all the junk that Mac accumulates in the desktop, even if you don't wipe out the finder. Do it by holding down the **Option and Shift** buttons while you boot the disk. You will lose all your file folders, but if you're desperate, what the heck?
10. **What can you do about a damaged disk?** Usually, you know there's a problem when you try to boot the system, and the happy little Mac face turns into a sad face at about the same time Mac spits the disk back out. So now what?

a.) Switch Mac off, count to 20, then hold down the ^ and Option buttons while you reboot the "bad" disk. Keep both buttons down until you can see the menu bar. If this works, you will lose all your file folders, but your applications, system files, and documents should survive. If this doesn't work, then...

b.) Switch Mac off, count to 20, then boot a good disk. (Then eject if you have only one drive.) Now insert the "bad" disk. If Mac accepts the disk, but says,"This disk is unreadable (or this isn't a Macintosh disk); do you want to initialize it?"; **don't initialize**; click eject, unless you want to erase everything on your "bad" disk. If Mac accepts it completely, replace or put in a good system file; because your bad disk apparently didn't have one. (See "How to Copy" Chapter to do this.) If this doesn't work, then...

c.) Inspect the "bad" disk for fingerprints, etc. by sliding the little metal door on the disk to one side; and, at the same time, rotating the disk. If you see anything suspicious, try gently swabbing it clean with a Q-tip and a little alcohol. If this doesn't work, then...

d.) Switch Mac off, count to 20, then boot a good disk which contains a "good" version of the application for the documents you lost. Boot the application, then pull down File to Open. When the dialog box appears (click "eject" if you have only one drive), insert the "bad" disk, click "drive" in the dialog box; and you may get a list of the lost documents. If you get the list, you may be able to open them, then "Save As..." them, one at a time to the "good" disk. If this doesn't work, then...

e.) Try using the *MacTools* which come with *Copy II Mac* to find the bad sectors. You may be able to repair or remove them. But if you can't, you will at least be able to cry while viewing the last remains of your disk's content, by pulling down Disk to View Edit, and using the scroll bar. If *MacTools* won't work, then (unless you can afford the services of a professional programmer) the time has probably come to consider reinitializing the disk (which means its content will be lost forever).

f.) Since Mac probably won't accept your "bad" disk even to initialize it, you will have to fool him: First, boot the system and eject. Second, insert a good disk, and pull down Special to Erase Disk. **Do not** click the dialog box. Third, insert the end of a paper clip in the little hole to the right of the disk slot, in order to eject the good disk without Mac knowing. Fourth, insert the "bad" disk, and click "ok" in the dialog box. Mac will erase it because he didn't get a chance to check it first.

**Warning:** Once a disk has "crashed," you should treat it with grave suspicion. Don't ever use it for anything important again; and if it crashes a second time, trash it !!!

221 MacDisasters
11. What if the disk is okay, but a file is lost or damaged?

a.) If you can't find an icon that you know ought to be on your desktop, try pulling down View to by Name. Now the icons will be listed alphabetically, and your lost file should be easy to find. Select it. Now, when you go back to by Icon, the icon will still be selected, and relatively easy to find.

b.) If some of your icons seem to have wandered off a little too far, adjust the scroll bars to display the upper left corner; then pull down Special to Clean Up, and the icons should come flying back to their rightful location.

c.) If MacPaint is interrupted (power failure, etc.), while you are working with it; and you later boot that disk, you will see two strange new files on the desktop called, "paint 1" and "paint 2." If you ever see two such files, boot the MacPaint Icon and nothing else. If you boot the MacPaint icon, the MacPaint document you were working on at the time of the interruption will be rescued, and you will be able to continue normally. If you boot anything other than the MacPaint icon, your work will be lost.

12. Bomb (System) Errors. Fortunately, they are not usually as serious as the cute little bomb would seem to imply. When the Mac "beeps" and the system error (bomb) dialog box appears, it is usually sufficient to record the system error number and any details which preceded the bomb, and press the restart button. (Yes, Virginia, you will lose whatever it is you didn't save; but then that's one reason why you should always save every ten minutes.)

When the disk reboots, look for clues on your desktop to the bomb error problem (out of space or unusual documents). Then boot the application, and see if you can make it happen again. Take notes. Sometimes the error never appears again, and nobody ever knows why (or cares!). If the error does appear again, it may be that a bug has appeared in your application. Try making another copy off of your master (that's one reason for keeping your masters in a separate, safe place). If the bug persists in the new copy as well, then it is time to talk to your dealer, the software producer, and (or) Apple. (And that's the reason why you wrote down the error number and those other details!) Good luck!

13. Can't throw away (or erase) the startup system or disk. After turning the Mac on, the disk you insert first (the disk that boots the system) contains the startup system. Mac won't let you throw it away because he needs it in order to know how to be a computer. If you want to throw away a system file, or erase an entire disk, you have two choices.

a.) Shut down; then start up Mac using a different disk. Now insert the disk with the system you want to destroy, and proceed. (If you have only one drive, eject the different disk you used to reboot Mac, by pressing [E] first.) Your other choice is to...

MacDisasters 222
b.) Start up an application in a different disk which contains its own system. That converts this different disk into a startup disk. Quit the application, and proceed with your destructive plans for the first disk.

14. How can I make it shut up? If the "beep" keeps waking people up, pull down ⌘ to Control Panel. When the Control Panel appears, set the speaker volume to "0"; or you can silence it completely by inserting a 3.55 mm earphone plug (Sony Walkman, or similar) into the audio output jack in the back of the Mac; or, if you like the "beep," you can listen to it on a Sony Walkman headset!
1. The Apple menu, opens, lists desk accessories on your disk, such as the Scrapbook and Chooser. Use Chooser before you begin, to prepare Mac for the kind of printing he will do when you are ready to print your creation: pull down to Chooser. When the Chooser window appears....

A.) If you will be using an ImageWriter connected to the AppleTalk network, click on the "active" button, the printer icon, and the printer's name, if they do not "highlight" when you click on them, then something is wrong.

If the AppleTalk ImageWriter icon isn't there, you need to move one into the system file of the disk you are using. See the "How to Copy" chapter. If the printer's name isn't there, or if it refuses to highlight (white print on black) when you click on it, then the printer is not turned on; or the printer and(or) your Mac are not connected to the AppleTalk network. See the "AppleTalk" chapter.

B.) If you will be printing on an ImageWriter connected to your Mac only, click the "Inactive" button for AppleTalk; then click on the ImageWriter icon, and click on the icon of the printer port to which the printer is connected. You can tell which port by looking to see where the ImageWriter plugs into Mac's back.

C.) Click the close box.

Warning: Do not ever connect or disconnect a printer and computer while it and the computer are turned on !!! Ignoring this rule cost me $175 for a new printer logic board.
2. Open the application you intend to use. Then pull down File to Page Setup.

A.) When the dialog box appears, check to make sure that it is not a LaserWriter dialog box. Page Setup dialog boxes are different for different applications; so not all of these options will be in every box. But consider the following: if you intend to have drawings, diagrams, or other graphics in your paper, or if you intend to print this on the LaserWriter later, click Tall Adjusted. Leave the other options as they are, unless you want something special. If the LaserWriter dialog box appears, repeat step 1. If that doesn't work, it may be because the "startup" disk does not contain an ImageWriter driver. You may have to quit and "reboot" with a disk that has a ImageWriter Driver; or you may have to move an ImageWriter driver onto your "startup" disk. See the "How to Copy" Chapter.

B.) Click "ok".

3. If your work will eventually be printed on a LaserWriter, even though it may be printed as a rough draft on an ImageWriter first, do your work using LaserWriter fonts: Times, Helvetica, Courier, and(or) Symbol.

If you are in the unfortunate position of having something you will eventually want to print on the LaserWriter, which was already typed before the first three steps were done, you will have to do these steps now. You cannot use the ImageWriter to predict where the LaserWriter page breaks will be unless you click Tall Adjusted in Page Setup...(or Print), and use Laser fonts. To change the fonts, you will have to select the blocks of text using each different ImageWriter font, pull down Character to Formats..., and click on the equivalent LaserWriter fonts:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ImageWriter</th>
<th>LaserWriter</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Geneva</td>
<td>Helvetica</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>New York</td>
<td>Times</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Monaco</td>
<td>Courier</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Math-Greek</td>
<td>Symbol</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Some ImageWriter fonts, such as London, San Francisco, Cairo, Mobile, Taliesin, etc. have no LaserWriter equivalent. These fonts will still print on the LaserWriter, and they will look just fine; the catch is that they take a lot longer to print.

4. When you are ready to print...

A.) Save (If you are using Word, pull down Document to Repaginate first).

B.) Pull down File to Page Preview..if you are using Word, and make sure that what you will print is what you want.

C.) Check to make sure that the printer is loaded with a ribbon cartridge and paper. If it's not, you'll see how to load it in steps 5 and 6

D.) Turn on the ImageWriter II by depressing the on/off button, which is on the right side of the ImageWriter's top. Three green lights adjacent to the on/off button should come on. If you are using an old ImageWriter, there will be only
two green lights. If you don't get the right number of green lights, or you get red instead, it's explained in step 9.

E.) Pull down File to Print. (Click the Page Preview dialog box if you are using Excel.) When the dialog box appears, click the Best or Faster or Draft button (Best is slow, good-looking, and most copyable; Draft is fast and awful; Faster is in between); then click the "ok" button. It may take a minute or two, but if all goes well, Mac ought to start printing.

To stop quickly, if something goes wrong during the printing process, first turn off the printer by pressing its on/off button; then press command-period. (During printing, a dialog box tells you to stop printing by pressing command-period.) If you want to stop, don't waste your time with this: takes a long time to take effect.

If you have problems with these first four steps, there may be help in the rest of this chapter. What follows will tell you how to change the ribbon (step 5), how to load paper (steps 6-8), what the buttons and lights are for (step 9), when and what to service yourself (step 10), how to set the dip switches (step 11), and what to do if the printer refuses to function (step 12).

5. How to replace the Ribbon Cartridge:

A.) Unplug the printer. Turn off the computer.

Warning: Don't reach inside the printer while it is turned on. The print head is hot, and it can move very fast; and cause serious injury!!!

Warning: Do not ever connect or disconnect a printer and computer while it and the computer are turned on !!!!!! Ignoring this rule cost me $175 for a new printer logic board.

B.) Remove the top forward cover.

C.) Gently grasp the Print Head (do not grasp the cartridge) and move it to the middle of the carriage.

D.) Remove the old ribbon cartridge from the ImageWriter by gently prying out the tabs on each side, and lifting the cartridge out.
E.) Turn the **Ribbon Knob** clockwise to tighten the ribbon.

F.) Take the new ribbon cartridge in both hands, and slip the ribbon between the **Ribbon Guide** and the **Platten**: lower it onto the ribbon deck and click it into place. The two Tabs should snap into the notches on the sides of the Scanner Cartridge; be sure you hear two distinct clicks.

G.) Turn the Ribbon Knob clockwise to tighten the ribbon again.

H.) Put the cover back on the printer.

6. **How to load pin-feed paper** (the kind with the holes along the edges):

A.) Turn off the computer, unplug the printer, and remove the both printer covers, front and back. Gently move the Bale away from the Platen.

  **Warning:** Don't reach inside the printer while it is turned on. The print head is hot, and it can move very fast; and cause serious injury!!!

  **Warning:** Do not ever connect or disconnect a printer and computer while it and the computer are turned on !!!! Ignoring this rule cost me $175 for a new printer logic board.

B.) Find the paper release lever on the outside of the ImageWriter case, and set it in the friction feed position:

   ![Friction Feed](image)

   ![Pin Feed](image)

C.) Flip open both of the black plastic paper clamps that normally hold the paper down over the sprocket/tractors with the pins sticking out of them.

D.) Lay down the lead sheet of pin-feed paper so that the same three tractor/sprocket pins on each side poke through the first three holes on each side of the lead sheet of paper. If the paper holes seem to fit the paper on both sides, and it looks like the paper will feed okay, close the paper clamps and go to step H; if not, go to step E.

E.) If the paper doesn't fit, you will have to adjust the sprocket/tractors. Flip the sprocket/tractor release levers into the up position. They are to the rear of the sprocket/tractors. *(Old ImageWriter, they are white plastic and move toward the rear. ImageWriter II, they are black plastic and lift toward the front.)*

F.) Slide the sprocket/tractors along the shaft until the paper holes seem to fit the paper on both sides, and it looks like the paper will feed okay. Close the paper clamps. Pull the paper into the printer by turning the Platen knob clockwise.

G.) Find the two little red lines on the Bale which holds the paper against the Platen. They are the ImageWriter's maximum margins; you will probably want
to center the paper so left red line's distance from the left paper edge is equal to the right red line's distance from the right paper edge. Gently, slide the two sprocket/tractors until the paper is centered and tight. Close the paper clamps.

H.) Pull the paper into the printer by turning the Platen knob clockwise until the top edge of the paper is under the Bale.

I.) Gently move the Bale into position so it holds the paper against the Platen.

J.) Set the paper release lever to the pin feed position.

K.) Replace the covers and plug in the ImageWriter.

7. How to load single sheet (unholy) paper.

A.) Turn off the computer and the ImageWriter.

   Warning: Don't reach inside the printer while it is turned on. The print head is hot, and it can move very fast; and cause serious injury!!!

   Warning: Do not ever connect or disconnect a printer and computer while it and the computer are turned on !!! Ignoring this rule cost me $175 for a new printer logic board.

B.) Old ImageWriter: back the pin-feed paper all the way out, and move the Bale away from the Platen. ImageWriter II: back the pin feed paper out to the sprocket/tractors.

C.) All ImageWriters: set the paper release lever to the friction feed position.

D.) Position the single sheet in the slot in the cover behind the Platen so the little red marks on the Bale will be properly centered, then pull the paper into the ImageWriter by turning the Platen knob clockwise until the edge of the paper is under the Bale. (Old ImageWriter, move the Bale into position.)

E.) If the paper is crooked, move the paper release to pin feed, straighten the paper, and move the release back to friction feed.

8. Paper Thickness:

A.) The ImageWriter works best on 16 to 24 lb bond paper. If you use flimsy paper, you will have problems.

B.) The ImageWriter will accept up to four sheets at a time; but you will have to adjust the paper thickness lever. It is at the right end of the shaft that the print head slides back and forth on. (Old ImageWriter, white plastic; ImageWriter II, black plastic.) If you are using only one page thickness, the lever goes all the
way forward (toward the Platen). If you are using two pages, move the lever one click back; three pages, two clicks, etc.

9. **Using the buttons and lights:** If there is power to the ImageWriter, the power light should glow green. If it doesn't, check to see if the ImageWriter is plugged in, and try clicking the on/off button again.

If the red paper error light is on steady, you have less than an inch of paper left, and you will probably need to reload. If the printer has stopped, and you want to print just one or two more lines, you can override the error light by pressing the select button.

On the ImageWriter II: If the error light is blinking regularly, the front cover is not properly positioned, or the paper is jammed. If it is blinking irregularly, the DIP switches are not properly set. See step 11.

The ImageWriter II also has a print quality button. It is important **only** if you selected Draft when you pulled down File to Print in step 4. If you select draft when you order the Mac to print, and both quality lights are lit on the ImageWriter, you will get "near letter quality." If the right quality light is on, you will get standard quality; and if the left one is on, you really will get draft.

10. **Servicing the ImageWriter:**

Clean and service your ImageWriter every six months. You will need a small vacuum cleaner or a small can of clean compressed air, a clean soft lint-free cloth and, if you have an old ImageWriter, a clean artist's paintbrush, and a can of "3 in 1" oil.

A.) Turn off Mac, unplug the ImageWriter and remove both printer covers.

B.) Remove the printer ribbon cartridge by gently prying out the tabs on each side, and lifting the cartridge out. (See diagram: step 5)
C.) If you have an old ImageWriter:
   i.) Remove the printer head by rotating the shiny metal lock plates on each side of it outward, to the left and right, and lifting the head upward. It also must be "unplugged" electrically from its base.
   ii.) Use the clean artist's paintbrush to gently clear paper dust from the printer head.
   iii.) Put two drops of "3 in 1" light machine oil on the white felt lube ring, which circles the print head guide bar, just below the normal position of the print head.
   iv.) Replace the printer head.

D.) All ImageWriters: Vacuum (or blow, using clean, canned compressed air) dust and pieces of paper out of the machine.

E.) Wipe off the carrier rod.

F.) Replace the ribbon cassette and both covers plug the ImageWriter in.

11. If your ImageWriter goes berserk, and starts printing gibberish and(or) throwing paper all over the place; or cranking out a perfectly good, but blank, piece of paper every time you print something:

A.) Quit the application you are using; and switch the ImageWriter off, then on again. Sometimes this will correct the problem. If not, then...

B.) Someone may have set your dip switches incorrectly. When the ImageWriter is used with a Lisa, Apple II e, Apple II c, or some other computer, the dip switches are set differently than they are for the Mac.

On the old ImageWriter, the dip switches are found inside the printer, below and to the left of the on/off pushbutton, down in the bottom of the trough for the flat wire that goes to the print head. To get the print head and this flat wire out of the way, turn the ImageWriter on and then off again; the print head will move over to the left end of the ImageWriter and stay there. The dip switches are covered with a thin sheet of clear plastic with the letters SW 1 and SW 2 directly over the dip switches. Gently lift the thin sheet of plastic off of the dip switches. Use a thin plastic rod, such as the thin pointed non-writing end of a ballpoint pen, to move the dip switches. If you are using the old, old ImageWriter connection cable, that was sold in the first four months of 1984, the switches should be set this way for the Mac:

If you are using the more recent, old ImageWriter cable, this switch must be moved down:
On the ImageWriter II, the dip switches are found inside the printer, in the opposite front corner from the on/off pushbutton, down in the front of the trough that the ribbon cartridge travels in. Use a thin plastic rod, such as the thin pointed non-writing end of a ballpoint pen, to move the dip switches. The switches should be set this way:

With AppleTalk card installed, this switch must be moved to the opposite position: down

C.) Usually, the printer cranks out blank paper because you allowed some "empty" formatting to creep over onto a "blank page" during your word processing. You can tell whether or not this is happening by selecting a whole document. If black, but empty, selected area is displayed on a "blank" page, then the computer will tell the printer to "print" a blank page. You will need to delete this "empty" formatting from your document. (This happens more frequently in MacWrite.)

If the printer persists in doing this, try typing in the page numbers which are to be printed, when Mac displays the "Print" dialog box.

As a last resort, shut off the printer, by pressing its on/off pushbutton, when you see that it has finished printing what you want. After all, you are the one in charge! You really ought to be keeping an eye on the printer and a hand near the pushbutton anyway, if you are doing anything irregular.

12. If your ImageWriter refuses to function at all:

A.) No green power on light:

i.) Test the outlet with another appliance.

ii.) If the appliance works, take the ImageWriter to a technician to have its fuse replaced.

B.) Green light, but nothing happens:

i.) Make sure the select is on.

ii.) Try another application on another disk that is known to work. (Your software may be bad.)

iii.) Is the computer end of the cable connected to the correct socket?
iv.) If you have AppleTalk, is it turned on at the control panel. If you don't have AppleTalk, is it turned off?

v.) Try the ImageWriter self-test feature: Turn off the select, then turn off the power. Hold the form feed button down, while you turn the power back on. Release both buttons. The ImageWriter should print its own complete set of characters over and over until you turn it off. If it does, you probably have a cable or computer problem. If it doesn't, you have printer problem. For an AppleTalk ImageWriter: If the red error light flashes during the self-test and you're not out of paper, the AppleTalk card is not responding.
1. The Apple menu, , lists **desk accessories** on your disk, such as the **Scrapbook** and **Chooser**. Use **Chooser** before you begin, to prepare Mac for the kind of LaserWriter printing he will do when you are ready to print your creation: pull down to **Chooser**. When the Chooser window appears...

   a.) If you will be using a LaserWriter or an ImageWriter connected to the AppleTalk network, click on the "active" button, the printer icon, and the printer's name, if they do not "highlight" when you click on them, then something is wrong:

   ![](image)

   > If there is no LaserWriter Icon, then you need to move a LaserWriter "driver" and LaserPrep icons into your system folder. See the "How to Copy" Chapter.)

   > The words, **LaserWriter** or **LaserWriter Plus**, in the box on the right should be "highlighted" in black. (If there is no highlighted name, the LaserWriter itself may have been turned off. If it is already on, check all AppleTalk connections in the system:

   ![](image)

   > There must be no dangling cable ends; every cable must be plugged into an AppleTalk connector. The Mac end of each AppleTalk connector must be plugged tightly into the **printer** port (the plug with the little printer icon) in the back of each participating Mac.
This AppleTalk network won't work because it has a dangling cable end.

> Also, the AppleTalk system must not make a complete circle; that is, there should always be two endpoints to the system.

> And there cannot be any "branches" the wiring must go from one endpoint, through every printer and computer in the system, to the other endpoint. There cannot be alternate paths; and there cannot be more than two endpoints.

Warning: Do not ever connect or disconnect a printer and computer while it and the computer are turned on !!!!! Ignoring this rule cost me $175 for a new printer logic board.

c.) Click the Chooser's close box.

3. Open the application you intend to use. Then pull down File to Page Setup....

a.) When the dialog box appears, check to make sure that it is not an ImageWriter dialog box. Page Setup dialog boxes are different for different applications; so not all of these options will be in every box. But consider the following options:

> Reduce or Enlarge reduces or enlarges your page by the amount you specify.
> Orientation will print your page sideways, if you click the "sideways" man or the Wide button.
> Font Substitution automatically substitutes LaserWriter fonts for ImageWriter fonts; but it is not a good idea to allow this !! Click the "X" out of this box. Your paper will look a lot better if you use LaserWriter fonts from the beginning, or do the substituting yourself, as I suggest in step 4.
> Smoothing is usually ok, but you'll have to determine some cases for yourself by trial and error. Don't use it with Thunder scan images.
> Definitely use the Widow Control feature if you have it. It prevents single lines from being isolated on a different page from the rest of their paragraph.
> And you may be able to set up your outer margins at this time.

Click the "ok" button.

Note: If an ImageWriter page setup dialog box appears instead, something is wrong. Repeat steps 1 and 2. If that doesn't work, it may be because the "startup" disk does not contain a LaserWriter driver. You may have to quit and "reboot" with a disk that has a LaserWriter Driver; or you may have to move a LaserWriter driver onto your "startup" disk. See the "How to Copy" Chapter.
4. Do your work using LaserWriter fonts: Times, Helvetica, Courier, Mobile, and (or) Symbol. (If you don't have any LaserWriter fonts, see the Font appendix.)

If you want to "LaserWrite" something which has already been typed with ImageWriter settings and fonts, you will have to do steps 1 through 4 now. You cannot tell where the page breaks will be unless the settings and fonts are the ones which will be used when the printing takes place; and of course the LaserWriter (or any other printer) won't even print, if the software isn't set up for that printer. To change the fonts, you will have to select the blocks of text using each different ImageWriter font, pull down Character to Formats..., and click on the equivalent LaserWriter fonts:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ImageWriter</th>
<th>LaserWriter</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Geneva</td>
<td>Helvetica</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>New York</td>
<td>Times</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Monaco</td>
<td>Courier</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Math-Greek</td>
<td>Symbol</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Some ImageWriter fonts, such as London, SanFrancisco, Cairo, Mobile, Taliesin, etc. have no LaserWriter equivalent. These fonts will still print on the LaserWriter, and they will look just fine; the catch is that it takes a lot longer to print. Just be sure that the font substitution box is not checked on Page Setup...

5. When you are ready to print with the LaserWriter...

   a.) Save (If you are using Word, pull down Document to Repaginate first).

   b.) Pull down File to Page Preview..if you are using Word, and make sure that what you will print is what you want.

   c.) Pull down File to Print. (Click the Page Preview dialog box if you are using Excel.) When the dialog box appears, click the options you want (see the notes about smoothing and font substitution in step 3), then click "ok."

If you have problems with steps 1 through 5, there may be help in the rest of this chapter. What follows will tell you how to turn on the LaserWriter, interpret the lights, load paper, change the toner cartridge, when and what to service yourself, how to clear paper jams, and how to disconnect from AppleTalk.
6. To turn on the LaserWriter:

   a.) Make sure it is off, then plug it in to a grounded, surge-protected AC outlet. (The LaserWriter won't work if the voltage source is unstable.)

   b.) Plug in the AppleTalk connector, if it isn't plugged in already.

   c.) Switch on the LaserWriter. (The On/Off switch is on the left end, just around the corner from the Power Cord Socket.)

   The LaserWriter should deliver its own test print within two minutes.

   If the test print is too light adjust the Print Density Dial on the back, one division darker. If it is too dark, adjust the dial one division lighter (toward the little "sun" icon).

   The green light on the front flashes as the LaserWriter warms up; then the yellow light starts flashing to show that the LaserWriter is processing a test print. The yellow light will go out when the LaserWriter delivers the test print. When the green light is on steady, the LaserWriter is ready to print. If the test print is messed up, or something else isn't right, read on.
7. **Interpreting the lights:** The LaserWriter has four lights: three in front and one in back. The front three indicator lights are green, yellow, and red. The back light is also green, and it is called the "test" light.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>green</th>
<th>yellow</th>
<th>red</th>
<th>&quot;test&quot;</th>
<th>meaning(s)</th>
<th>action</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>off</td>
<td>off</td>
<td>off</td>
<td>off</td>
<td>no power</td>
<td>check power cord</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>off</td>
<td>off</td>
<td>off</td>
<td>off</td>
<td>no toner cartridge</td>
<td>see step 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>flashing</td>
<td>off</td>
<td>off</td>
<td>off</td>
<td>warming up</td>
<td>wait</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>on</td>
<td>off</td>
<td>off</td>
<td>off</td>
<td>ready</td>
<td>pull down File to Print</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>on</td>
<td>flashing</td>
<td>off</td>
<td>off</td>
<td>processing a job</td>
<td>wait</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>on</td>
<td>on</td>
<td>off</td>
<td>off</td>
<td>manual feed</td>
<td>insert paper in manual feed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>off</td>
<td>on</td>
<td>off</td>
<td>off</td>
<td>out of paper</td>
<td>see step 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>on</td>
<td>off</td>
<td>on</td>
<td>off</td>
<td>paper jam</td>
<td>see step 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>on</td>
<td>off</td>
<td>off</td>
<td>on</td>
<td>electronic failure</td>
<td>curse, call Apple, spend money</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

8. **How to load the paper cassette:**

   a.) Remove the paper cassette from the LaserWriter. It's at the left end, in the lower slot; under the paper output tray. (See diagram above.)

   b.) Fan a stack of about 100 sheets of paper, place it in the cassette, and tap the ends of the sheets so they are up against the outside (non-clip) end of the cassette.

      >Use 16-20 lb Xerox paper.

      >If the paper is letterhead or three-hole-punched paper, load it face down, with the letterhead at the clip-end of the tray.

   c.) Push the stack under the clips.

   d.) Slide the cassette back into the slot, clip-end first. It's in place when you can't push it in any farther.

9. **How to hand-feed the LaserWriter.**

   a.) Pull down File to Print. When the dialog box appears, click the Manual Feed button, and specify what pages you want to print. Click "ok."

      From the time you click "ok" you have 1.5 minutes to insert the first sheet in the manual feed guide. If you don't make it, you get to start over again.

   b.) The manual feed guide is at the right end of the LaserWriter. When the middle yellow light comes on steady, line up the paper (head first, face up, if it's letterhead, etc.) on the right side on the manual feed guide. When the LaserWriter is ready to print, it draws the paper in.

   c.) To print on both sides of the paper: after the first side has been printed, put it back in the manual feed guide, printed side down, head first.
d.) When your printing job is done, the middle yellow light goes off and the printer reverts to automatic feed using the paper cassette.

Toner is the LaserWriter's "ink." It comes in a Toner Cartridge. The cartridge is good for about 3000 prints, then it has to be replaced. The best way to tell when it needs replacing is to weigh it. A new cartridge contains 160 grams of toner; so when a cartridge has "lost" 160 grams, its time has come. However, not everyone has a balance handy. A more convenient method for keeping track of the cartridge is the Toner Cartridge Indicator, which is on the front of the Toner Cartridge Door:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1300-3000</th>
<th>1000 Prints Left</th>
<th>Green Corner 200 Prints Left</th>
<th>All Red</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>All Green</td>
<td>Yellow</td>
<td>Yellow</td>
<td>All Red</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prints Left</td>
<td>Corner</td>
<td>Prints Left Toner Used Up</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Just realize that this gage is not infallible. It only counts pages, not the amount of toner left. If the past thousand pages have required less black toner than "normal," you may have a lot of toner left when the gage says the toner is used up.

Some toner cartridges need to make about 90 prints before the LaserWriter prints look their best; so don't despair at the low quality of the first few prints with a new toner cartridge. However, there have been a few defective toner cartridges sold; so if the prints after print number 90 are still looking bad, you may want to consider asking Apple for a refund.

10. How to replace the Toner Cartridge and Cleaning Pad:

a.) Unplug the LaserWriter. Turn off the computer.

b.) Open the upper unit of the LaserWriter by pulling up on the release lever. (See diagrams in step 6.) The upper unit tilts up to the right on a hinge.

c.) Open the Toner Cartridge Door.

Note: be careful with the next step, or you will make a terrible mess!!

d.) Remove the old toner cartridge by grabbing it on the end and pulling it out; but don't continue to hold it by this end, with the other end pointed at the floor. If you do this, toner will spill out the bottom, all over everything.

e.) Remove the new cartridge from its bag, holding it by the handle.
f.) Take the new toner cartridge in both hands, and rock it gently back and forth about five times as shown in the sketch above to distribute the toner. You can use this same strategy to get a little more toner out of a dying toner cartridge.

g.) Slide the cartridge into the LaserWriter until it "clicks" into place.

h.) Flex the black tab on the right side of the cartridge until it breaks loose. Pull the tab, and the tape which is attached to it out until the tape is completely removed. (The tape is about two feet long!) If the tab and the tape come apart, take hold of the tape itself and pull it all the way out.

i.) Close the Toner Cartridge Door.

j.) Open the green cover inside the main unit if it’s not already open.

   Warning: If the LaserWriter has been on, the green cover will be hot, and the orange rollers will be hot enough to burn you!!!

k.) Notice the cutaway on the top of the green cover where the green end of the cleaning pad fits. Take hold of the green end and slide out the cleaning pad. Slide the new cleaning pad into the same groove.

l.) Close the green cover.

m.) Dip a Q-tip in isopropyl alcohol and gently wipe the transfer wire until no more residue appears on the Q-tip.

   The transfer wire is behind the green cover in the main unit; located under the almost transparent crossed wires which you can see in the middle area inside the printer. It is very thin, fragile, and hard to see.

n.) Dampen a cloth with water and wipe the transfer guide clean.
The transfer guide is the brass-colored metal plate behind the transfer wire.

o.) Close the main unit.

Servicing the LaserWriter: Clean and service your Imagewriter whenever you replace the toner cartridge as described in step 10 above. In addition, the following services will be required from time to time:

11. If you see fuzzy vertical lines on the "LaserPrinted" page:
   a.) Unplug the LaserWriter. Turn off the computer.
   b.) Open the upper unit of the LaserWriter by pulling up on the release lever. (See diagrams in step 6.) The upper unit tilts up to the right on a hinge.
   c.) Open the cartridge door.
   Note: be careful with the next step, or you will make a terrible mess!!!
   d.) Remove the old toner cartridge by grabbing it on the end and pulling it out; but DON'T continue to hold it by this end, with the other end pointed at the floor. If you do this, toner will spill out the bottom, all over everything.
   e.) Get the green toner cartridge wire cleaner. Unless some other idiot has misplaced it, it should be sitting inside the LaserWriter, at the cartridge (open) end, near the front.
   f.) Insert it in the long slot on top of the cartridge and slide it back and forth several times (the cleaning tool slides along a black protective plastic cover inside the slot).
   g.) Put the cartridge back in the printer, and close the door. Close the main unit.

12. If you see stains on the back of a printed page:
   a.) Turn off the LaserWriter and let the rollers cool !!!
   b.) Open the upper unit of the LaserWriter by pulling up on the release lever. The upper unit tilts up to the right on a hinge.
   c.) Open the green cover inside the main unit if it's not already open.
Warning: If the LaserWriter has been on, the green cover will be hot, and the orange rollers will be hot enough to burn you!

k.) Clean the black and orange rollers with a damp cloth; then dry them.

l.) Close the green cover. Close the main unit.

13. When paper jams the LaserWriter (red light, green light):

a.) Turn off the LaserWriter.

b.) Open the upper unit of the LaserWriter by pulling up on the release lever. (See diagrams in step 6.) The upper unit tilts up to the right on a hinge.

c.) Open the green cover inside the main unit if it's not already open.

Warning: If the LaserWriter has been on, the green cover will be hot, and the orange rollers will be hot enough to burn you!

d.) Gently pull the paper from behind the cover, toward the front of the printer.

e.) If you don't find paper jammed inside the printer, open the printer's lower right door, under the manual feed, and check there. Pull the paper out, and close the door.

14. If paper is not feeding properly, and is repeatedly jamming the printer:

a.) Open the upper unit of the LaserWriter by pulling up on the release lever. (See diagrams in step 6.) The upper unit tilts up to the right on a hinge.

b.) Find the separation belt. It is a small clear plastic strip with a spring on the end, located near the back of the printer, behind the green cover. Take note of how it is positioned.

c.) Slip the loop off the handles, and slide it out from under the roller.

d.) Take a new separation belt, and slip the top loop over the peg at the top. (The end nearest the top unit hinge.) Be sure the indentation is on the right side.

e.) Pass the new separation belt over the first roller (nearest the hinge) and under the second roller.

f.) Grasp the spring by the little circular handle on its very end, and hook the other spring circle (nearer the spring) over the lower handle. (away from the hinge).

g.) Close the main unit.

243 LaserWriter & AppleTalk
15. If a black line is appearing down the right side of your printed pages: remove the separation belt as described above, clean with a water-dampened Q-tip; and reinstall it as described above.

16. If the LaserWriter won't print:
   a.) Check the lights first. See step 7.
   b.) Turn the LaserWriter off, then on.
      >If it produces a test print go to step c because the problem is with the AppleTalk wiring, or the computer, or the disk.
      >If it doesn't produce a test print, call an Apple dealer. (Good luck!)
   c.) Do step 1-3 at the beginning of this Chapter. If the LaserWriter still doesn't print, then...
   d.) Open the system folder, select (click on) the LaserWriter driver icon, and check the Get Info on every disk in use; make sure that everyone on the AppleTalk network is using the same version of each type of printer resource. (Whenever one person in the network updates their disks, everyone else must update their disks too. To replace the printer resource, see the "How to Copy" Chapter.)
   e.) Print the LaserWriter Test document which is on the disk that came with the LaserWriter; if the document prints, then you have a disk/software problem. Make another work disk, and try again.

17. If you want to disconnect your Mac from the AppleTalk system or reconnect it...
   a.) Make sure your Mac is turned off.
   b.) Unplug the AppleTalk connector from the Mac, but leave the long cables plugged-in to the connector.
      Warning: If a long cables are disconnected from an AppleTalk connector while the system is in use, it will raise havoc with the users.
      >If you remove a connector from the AppleTalk network, be sure to plug both cable ends into a cable extender. If you leave a free cable end, you will shut down the system for other users.
      >You cannot remove a connector from either and of the AppleTalk network, because that will result in a free cable end, no matter what you do.

1 As of this writing, the current LaserWriter printer icon is version 3.1; and the AppleTalk ImageWriter icon version is 2.3.
> Don't remove a connector if there is any possibility that someone is using the network. The AppleTalk network is thoroughly disrupted if any AppleTalk connectors are disconnected while the system is in use!!

The system will work as long as all the long cables are plugged-in to a connector. It doesn't matter if some connectors are not connected to Macs:

![Diagram](image)

This network will still work because all the cables are still plugged into connectors.

c.) When you want to reconnect, make sure your Mac is off, and plug the Mac end of the connector back in again.

18. If you want to format your documents for the LaserWriter while you are working away from the AppleTalk network, you must have a LaserWriter driver in the system file of the disk you are using. After the disk's desktop appears...

   a.) Open the Chooser, click on the "Active" AppleTalk button, and click on the LaserWriter icon. If it isn't there, you will have to move it onto your disk.

   b.) Then, after you are in the application (Word, RSG, etc.), pull down File to Page Setup..., you should get either a "generic" or a LaserWriter Page Setup box. It must not be an ImageWriter box.

As long as AppleTalk is "Active," the LaserWriter icon is selected, the Page is Setup for the LaserWriter, and you use LaserWriter fonts; your documents will be formatted for the LaserWriter, and what you see will be a little closer to what you get.
How This Book Happened

I teach high school Chemistry and Physics. About three years ago, I assigned a research paper to my physics classes, and provided several Macs for them to use in preparing the paper. Many of my students had not done word processing before; and none of them had used the Mac. The Mac is easy to use, but the books that come with the Mac’s applications do not take advantage of this virtue. They are not designed for people who want to be “up and running” as quickly as possible. So I wrote a simplified set of instructions for my students to use. When they used my instructions, they were usually able to do word processing in less than ten minutes with no additional assistance from me.

When the physics research papers were done, the main office secretary, Corey Corkill, started using one of the Macs I had borrowed for the project. Like the kids, she also was able to use my instructions to do word processing within a few minutes. She did the school bulletin and some correspondence for the principal on the first day she had the machine. But she wanted to do some database and spreadsheet work as well; so I wrote a set of instructions for these applications also.

Other secretaries and student aides used my instructions with equal success. That one little Apple Macintosh revolutionized the main office. Last year they were using two Macs and a LaserWriter. Our school newspaper used two more Macs to produce the school paper. So I wrote instructions for the graphics and page processing software too. We got a Mac for the science department, and the other science teachers started to use it. I watched in humiliation while staff members and students struggled with the now expanded instructions. I revised the instructions, and my “test” population tried again. I revised again, etc.

The much-revised pile of instructions began to look like a book, so we put the pile together and called it The Mac Idiot Book.

The Macintosh (Mac)

The Apple Macintosh was introduced to the world in January of 1984. It had 128K of RAM (128,000 bytes of erasable internal machine memory), 64K of ROM (64,000 bytes of permanent internal machine memory), one 400K single-sided internal disk drive, and two pieces of software: MacWrite and MacPaint. It loaded its programs too slowly, it ran out of memory frequently, and copying disks was incredibly irritating because of the need to repeatedly exchange the disks in its one single-sided disk drive. This first little Mac is known in polite company today as the Mac 128.
By fall of that year, the Mac 512 and a second external disk drive were available. Because it had 512K of memory, the Mac 512 ran out of memory less often; and the external disk drive allowed owners to keep applications they were using on a work disk, and the files or documents they were creating on a second data disk. It also made disk copying less tedious.

Approximately four months later the LaserWriter printer was announced, and the Mac 512 was suddenly a first class printing machine. Printed output from the Mac/LaserWriter system looked professional; it no longer gave the impression of a typewriter or a dot matrix computer printer. The system could print beautifully in any one of a number of different type fonts, and it could print good-looking graphics too!

But the graphics and page processing documents; and the many beautiful fonts and applications required huge amounts of memory storage. The 400K disc drives were no longer adequate, the Mac still ran out of memory from time to time; and it continued to load its programs too slowly. Thus, in January of 1986, the Mac Plus and the Mac 512 Extended were born. They both have a 128K ROM (instead of 64K) which allows the programs to load and operate much more quickly; and they have double-sided disk drives which nearly double the disk memory storage capacity to 800K. In addition to these features, the Mac Plus has 1028K (1 megabyte) of RAM and a SCSI port which allows it to run an external hard disk at reasonable speed. We have written the Mac Idiot Book with the assumption that you are using either the Mac Plus or the Mac 512 Extended.

But Apple never quits! In the spring of 1987 they introduced two more great Macs: the Mac SE and the Mac II. The SE is essentially a Mac Plus with the following differences: a 256K ROM; a cooling fan; room for a second internal disk drive and expansion card; and different connectors for the keyboard and mouse. Except for the new connectors, these changes are for the better; but unless the price of the new SE is quite competitive, the Mac Plus will continue to be a very satisfactory machine.

However the Mac II is quite another story. It has color, room for truly UNBELIEVABLE expansion (up to 64 mega bytes on the main board!), speed to take your breath away, and room for many expansion cards (MS-DOS? UNIX?). It is not at all portable: it looks more like an IBM PC than a Mac. Most significant existing Mac software will run on the Mac II, but not all: for example, Word and Excel will; but MacWrite and the Flight Simulator won't. The desktop is almost the same; but the operating system is somewhat different. It will be a wonderful machine for desktop publishers and engineers, when new software is written to take advantage of its mind-blowing power; but it may be more than the average computer user needs at this time.
MacDraw is usually best for "drafting" advertisements, posters, or precision drawings; MacPaint is usually best for "drawing" freehand sketches. SuperPaint is a greatly improved MacPaint with the features of MacDraw thrown in. (However SuperPaint requires 430K of memory in order to work properly; it works best in a Mac Plus.)

Once you have pasted a part of your drawing in place in MacPaint, it loses its identity as a particular part and becomes nothing more than a collection of dots (pixels) at that location. But different parts of a MacDraw drawing exist as separate entities in Mac's memory, like the separate components of an artist's collage. MacDraw allows you to "slide" the different parts of your drawing around on the screen until you get just the right effect. MacDraw is therefore called an "object oriented" graphics program, while MacPaint is said to be "bit-mapped." When SuperPaint is operating in its "Draw" layer, it behaves like MacDraw. In its "Paint" layer, it behaves like MacPaint.

It is easier to "fine tune" a MacDraw drawing (or the "draw" layer of SuperPaint) after you are "done"; and MacDraw pictures can be stretched with less distortion than MacPaint drawings. But MacPaint (or the "paint" layer of SuperPaint) is so simple that two year old kids can make drawings after two minutes of instruction. MacDraw is intimidating at first. However, learning to use either program (or layer) well requires about the same amount of effort.

MacPaint does allow you to make little erasures and additions bit by bit, until your drawing is just right; and this is a virtue that MacDraw lacks. If you use Thunderscan to electronically copy photographs into the Macintosh, you will probably use MacPaint to modify the drawings. If you plan to use the Art Grabber+ to reach out and grab graphics while you are working within Word, MacWrite, or RSG, you will have to use MacPaint, because Art Grabber+ won't work with MacDraw graphics.

MacPaint will allow you to paste text anywhere you like; but once you have pasted it, you can't process it any more. MacDraw allows some limited word processing, but it was designed to be a graphics tool. Word processing in MacDraw is frustrating because its "caption" text will cut and paste, but it won't word wrap; and it's "paragraph" text will word wrap, but it won't cut and paste. Text, in the "draw" mode of SuperPaint combines the good features of "caption" and "paragraph" text, however there is one other problem: everything in one MacDraw or SuperPaint text block must be the same font, size and style; which defeats one of the Mac's greatest virtues.

MacDraw artwork looks better on the LaserWriter. But to do good graphics work, one really needs to know MacPaint and MacDraw (or the "paint" and "draw" layers) well. Then it is possible to make an intelligent choice when trying to decide which graphics program (or layer) will best solve a particular graphics problem.
MacWrite, Word, and ReadySetGo are all good word processors:

- They are easy to learn, they are easy to use, they do quality work, and they are efficient.
- They have "cut and paste" allowing you to delete or add any amount of text anywhere in the document at any time, and have the text you've already typed adjust to the new changes.
- They "wordwrap"; that is, the words flow automatically from one line to the next as you type, or change the margins or font sizes, or insert new text.
- What you see on the screen, is pretty much what you get when Mac print's on paper.
- They can print in dozens of different type styles, sizes, and fonts.
- They allow you to "import" drawings, charts, or other graphics; and will print these graphics as part of the document.

Nevertheless, there are some important differences:

- Word has "windows." It's many windows allow you to view and edit two different parts of your story simultaneously; or view several different documents simultaneously. You can cut and paste between the different documents, make ongoing comparisons, and see the effects of your changes on each document immediately. MacWrite can't do this.
- Word merges documents when, for example, you need essentially the same letter mailed to many different people, with only the names and address being different from one letter to the next. Give Word a list of names and addresses and a basic form letter and it will automatically type out a "personal" letter to every person on the list. Merge is impossible with MacWrite.
- Word does footnotes beautifully and effortlessly, MacWrite won't do footnotes conveniently.
- Word has more optional keyboard commands, and a greater variety of selection methods than MacWrite. Keyboard commands permit experienced operators to work more rapidly by using the keyboard to do the mouse's work. (Every time you take your hands off of the keyboard, you quit typing, and it slows you down.)
- Word can make an index or table of contents automatically. It has a built in spelling checker.
- Word can add columns of numbers and alphabetize lists. You can include small graphics within text, and you can print in columns if you want.

But on the other hand:

- Word costs four times as much as MacWrite.
- Word does not allow you to see the page numbers or page headers Except in Page Preview. (What you see while you are working is not quite what you get!)
*ReadySetGo* is a *page processor* application that will allow you to lay out newspapers, or other paper communication in an illustrated multi-column format. While you are working within *ReadySetGo* you can "grab" *Word*, *MacWrite*, *MacPaint*, and *MacDraw* documents, and paste them into *ReadySetGo* blocks. You can drag and size the blocks to any position and shape you want, and the text will "flow" to fit them or you can "slide" the picture around inside the block and crop it to get the best effect. *ReadySetGo* also lets you put dividing lines, and frames around and between selected portions of text and graphics.
You can organize, update, and store financial records or other sets of mathematically related numbers with such spreadsheet programs as Excel. You can use File or Excel or other database programs to organize, update, and store types of information which might also be kept in card files, tables or lists. This information can be sorted according to any criteria you want to use. For example a collection of credit records could be sorted by name, address, size of debt, income, etc. Work with spreadsheets and databases is usually called data processing.

Excel has room for more than 16,000 records. It is lightning fast in command execution; and its dozens of keyboard command options (see page 28) give users the potential for even greater speed.

Even though Excel is faster, File is probably the better database application. File has as much room as Excel. It is easier to use when you enter the data in the first place, and it's much easier to use when you want to sort or extract data later. It allows you to draft specialized "file cards" of your own design; and you can even keep pictures on the "file cards."

But Excel does several things that File cannot do at all:

Excel can draw graphs and charts which are based on the information contained in spreadsheets or databases created in Excel. The process is fully automated and, of course, lightning fast. You can paste the graphs and charts into the scrapbook for later use; or paste them into Word, MacDraw or MacWrite documents directly from the clipboard.

Excel has macro capability. A macro is a set of instructions that tells Mac how to run Excel all by himself. All you have to do is show Mac how to do a sequence of operations in Excel, while the macro recorder is running. Then the next time you want to do that same sequence of operations, you run the "macro" that you recorded, and Mac will do it automatically.

Excel allows you to change fonts and font sizes from the menu, just like MacWrite and Word.
1. Fonts are typefaces; that is, kinds or styles of printing. There are many different fonts available on the Mac. If you want to see which key will produce which symbol in a given font, use Key Caps:

   a.) Pull down Apple to Key Caps. The word Key Caps will appear in the menu bar, and the Key Caps window will appear.

   b.) Pull down Key Caps to the font you want to know about. The symbols on the keyboard in the Key Caps window show which symbols will be produced by which key while that font is selected.

   c.) Press Shift on the keyboard. Now the symbols on the keyboard in the Key Caps window show which symbols will be produced by which key when the Shift is pressed with that font selected.

   d.) Press Option on the keyboard. Now the symbols on the keyboard in the Key Caps window show which symbols will be produced by which key when the Option is pressed with that font selected. The symbol and picture fonts have more symbols in Option than the other fonts. For a few fonts, Option-shift will produce still more symbols!

2. In the samples that follow, I tell you to use the installed ImageWriter font sizes only. This is not strictly true: you can specify any font size you like. But, if you want your printing to look its very best, you must specify a font size that is exactly half the size of the installed font, when you are printing in Best quality on the ImageWriter. However any LaserWriter font size you specify will look good when printed on the LaserWriter, regardless of the installed sizes. (The LaserWriter "builds" its letters "from scratch" inside the printer. It doesn't need to be told how to make them by the Mac.) The different LaserWriter font sizes only serve to make them sharper when displayed on the Mac screen. In examining the samples, please realize that this book was printed on a LaserWriter; so the LaserWriter fonts look pretty good. The ImageWriter fonts look pretty good on a LaserWriter too, but the catch is, they take a very long time to print. (LaserWriter fonts look terrible on an ImageWriter.)

This is Helvetica, a sans serif LaserWriter font, in 9 point: abcdefg 1234567 ABCDEFG !@#$%^&
This is Helvetica, a sans serif LaserWriter font, in 10 point: abcdefg 1234567 ABCDEFG !@#$%^&
This is Helvetica, a sans serif LaserWriter font, in 12 point: abcdefg 1234567
It's also available in 14, 18 and 24, but size doesn't matter with the LaserWriter.

This is Geneva, a sans serif ImageWriter font, in 9 point: abcdefg 1234567 ABCDEFG !@#$%^&
This is Geneva, a sans serif ImageWriter font, in 10 point: abcdefg 1234567 ABCDEFG
This is Geneva, a sans serif ImageWriter font, in 12 point: abcdefg
Geneva is also available in 14, 18, 20 and 24, be sure to use the installed sizes only.
This is Courier, a LaserWriter font, in 9 point for fools who love typewriters: abcdefq
This is Courier, a LaserWriter font, in 10 point for fools who love typewriter
This is Courier, a LaserWriter font, in 12 point for fools who love typewriters
Courier is also available in 14, 18, and 24, but size doesn't

This is Monaco, an ImageWriter font, in 9 point for fools who love typewriters
This is Monaco, an ImageWriter font, in 12 point for fools who love typewriters
Monaco is available only in 9 and 12, fortunately!

This is Times, a formal LaserWriter font, in 9 point: abcdefg 1234567 ABCDEFG
This is Times, a formal LaserWriter font, in 10 point: abcdefg 1234567 ABCDEFG
This is Times, a formal LaserWriter font, in 12 point: abcdefg 1234567
Times is also available in 14, 18, and 24, but it doesn't matter with the LaserWriter.

This is New York, a formal ImageWriter font, in 9 point: abcdefg 1234567 ABCDEFG
This is New York, a formal ImageWriter font, in 10 point: abcdefg 1234567
This is New York, a formal ImageWriter font, in 12 point: abcdefg
New York is available in 14, 18, 20, and 24; be sure to use the installed sizes

Manhattan, available in 12 point only, is an ImageWriter font much like New York, but in the Option and
Option Shifted positions, it is quite different:

Fonts 256
Mobile is an ImageWriter picture font that is available only in 18 points. Mobile is also known as Taliesin. Even though the Mobile and Taliesin fonts are identical, there is a small problem: if you prepare a document using Mobile fonts, and later try to print it using a system disk that has only Taliesin fonts, the fonts will not be displayed.
Here's what's available in Cairo, another ImageWriter picture font, in 18 points only:

Here are some additional ImageWriter fonts, for which there is no LaserWriter equivalent:

This is Chicago, available in only 12 points: abcdefg 1234567 ABCDE

This is Venice, available in only 14 points: abcdefg 1234567

This is London, available in only 18 points: abcde

This is Athens, available in only 18 points: abcde

This is San Francisco, available in only 12 points: abcdefg 1234567 ABCDE

This is Los Angeles, available in 24 points: abcdefg 1234567 ABCDE

This is Mos Eisley, available in 24 points: abcdefg 1234567

This is Mos Eisley, in 24 pt.
This is Symbol, a specialized LaserWriter font, for which there is no ImageWriter equivalent, 9, 12, 18 and 24 points:

These are Zapf Dingbats, specialized LaserWriter fonts, for which there is no ImageWriter equivalent, available in 9, 12, 18 and 24 points:
Here are some additional LaserWriter fonts, for which there is no ImageWriter equivalent:

This is Bookman, a formal LaserWriter font, in 10 point: abcdefg 1234567 ABCDEFG!@#
This is Bookman, a formal LaserWriter font, in 12 point: abcdefg 1234
This is Bookman, a formal LaserWriter font, in 14 point: abcd
Bookman is also available in 18 and 24, but these fonts aren't needed.

This is Narrow Helvetica, a sans serif LaserWriter font, in 10 point: abcdefg1234567A
This is Narrow Helvetica, a sans serif LaserWriter font, in 12 point: ab
This is Narrow Helvetica, sans serif LaserWriter font, in 14
N Helvetica is also available in 18 and 24, but these fonts aren't needed.

This is Palatino, a formal LaserWriter font, in 10 point: abcdefg 1234567 ABCDEFG !@#$
This is Palatino, a formal LaserWriter font, in 12 point: abcdefg 12345
This is Palatino, a formal LaserWriter font, in 14 point: abcd
Palatino fonts are also available in 18 and 24, but they aren't needed.

This is Zapf Chancery an informal LaserWriter font, in 10 point: abcdefg 1234567 ABCDE
This is Zapf Chancery an informal LaserWriter font, in 12 point: abcdef
This is Zapf Chancery an informal LaserWriter font, in 14 pt:
Zapf Chancery is also available in 18 and 24 but these fonts aren't needed.

This is Avant Garde, a sans serif LaserWriter font, in 10 point: abcdefg 1234567 ABCDEFG
This is Avant Garde, a sans serif LaserWriter font, in 12 point: abcdefg
This is Avant Garde, a sans serif LaserWriter font, in 14 pt:
Avant Garde is also available in 18 and 24, but it isn't needed for the LaserWriter.

This is New Century, a formal LaserWriter font, in 10 point: abcdefg 1234567 ABCDEFG
This is New Century, a formal LaserWriter font, in 12 point: abcdefg
This is New Century, a formal LaserWriter font, in 14 point:
New Century is also available in 18 and 24, but it isn't needed for the LaserWriter.

Fonts 260
3. Here's how to change fonts which are installed on a disk:

   a.) Insert the Macintosh System Tools in the external drive. (If you don't have an 800K external drive, eject the destination disk, and insert System Tools in the internal drive.)

   b.) Open the directory windows of both disks, then open the System Tools system folder and utilities folder. Drag the Font/DA Mover and the "fonts" icon (it looks like a little suitcase) across to the destination disk window. If Mac asks you to exchange disks, do it. Eject System Tools if it isn't already ejected.

   c.) Boot the Font/DA Mover (double-click on the icon). When the dialog box opens, click the Font button if it isn't already blackened. The fonts which are in the system now are listed on the left.

   d.) Select (that is, click, drag over, and highlight) the names of all the fonts and sizes you don't want in the left (systems) list of the dialog box. Hold the shift key down as you select, so you can get rid of everything you don't want on the first try. Now click the Remove button. Mac will tell you not to take his system fonts. Not to worry, you can take them even if you want to; there will still be a few fonts left for the two of you! Click "ok." If some of the fonts you do want aren't anywhere to be seen, have patience, we'll get to them later.

   e.) Hold the option button down and click Open. When the dialog box appears, select (click) "Fonts" from the list that appears (you may have to click the little disk icon first, in order to find "Fonts") and click Open. A list of the fonts available in the "Fonts" file will appear on the right.

   f.) Select the fonts you want this list. Hold the shift key down as you select, so you can get everything you want on the first try. When everything you want is highlighted, click <<Copy>> to install the selected fonts in Mac's system. The fonts you wanted should appear in the list on the left.

   g.) Click Remove. Click Quit. When you get back to the desk top, trash the Font/DA Mover and the "Fonts" icons.

4. To type in accent marks:

   a.) Type the Option key combination for the accent mark you want:

      Option-'   (grave accent)       Option-e   (acute accent)
      Option-i   (circumflex)        Option-u   (umlaut)
      Option-n   ~ (tilde)

   b.) Type the letter you want to accent.

   c.) If you want only the accent mark, type the Option key combination twice.
Desk accessories are what you get when you pull down ⌘ to one of the items listed under the dotted line:

A desk accessory is a little application that you can use immediately, without having to quit the big application you happen to be using at the time. Every system must have at least one desk accessory installed in it or the system will crash. The most valuable desk accessories are discussed in detail elsewhere in this book:

a.) Key Caps, in the Font Appendix.
b.) Scrapbook, in "The Desktop" and "Integrating Multiple Applications" Chapters.
c.) Art Grabber+, in "Integrating Multiple Applications" Chapters.
d.) Chooser, in step 6 of application Chapters such as "Word" or "SuperPaint"

1. But the Control Panel is also an important desk accessory. You can use the Control Panel to connect or disconnect AppleTalk (depending on whether or not you are wired into it). The printer won't work if the switch is the wrong way.
You also need the Control Panel to control the RAM cache which was discussed in the "Hurry up Mac" chapter. The other Control Panel functions are either self-explanatory (Speaker Volume) or trivial (Desktop Pattern).

The world can probably do without the other hundred or so desk accessories that are for sale and even free, depending on where you look. Some of them mostly take up space on the disk, and (Caution!) a few even cause the system to crash.

2. However the Alarm Clock can be convenient:

   a.) Pull down to Alarm Clock. A clock will appear:  

   b.) To see the date or set the date or the time: click in the center of the little note:

   c.) To set the alarm clock, click the lower right box with the alarm clock. 

   To reset the date, click the box with the calendar in it:

   To reset the time, click the lower left box with the large traditional analog clock:

   Click on hours, minutes, or seconds in the reset box which appears, then set them as desired by clicking on the up or down arrows. When you are satisfied, click in the little note (which is now upside down) again.

3. The spelling checker, MacLightning, can sometimes be useful:

   The problem is, it needs a huge (297K minimum!) dictionary file called "Merriam Webster's Ninth." "Merriam Webster's Ninth" has an icon that looks like a dictionary. MacLightning won't work without it, but you can have it on a disk in the external drive (and not on the startup/working disk) if you don't have room on the startup/working disk. You can drag the dictionary onto any disk that is in the Mac (see the "How to Copy" chapter).

   MacLightning, the desk accessory, must be installed just like any other desk accessory (see step 6 of this appendix). The desk accessory portion of MacLightning requires another 52K of disk space.
Here's how to use MacLightning:

a.) The application you want MacLightning to check must be open. While it is open, pull down ⌘ to MacLightning. A check mark, ✓, will appear near the right end of the menu bar. This is the MacLightning menu.

MacLightning can operate in either of two modes: interactive or non-interactive. The interactive mode checks your spelling and grammar as you type. Non-interactive proofreads a selected block of text in a few seconds.

To use the interactive mode,

b.) Pull down ⌘ to Interactive. Start working in your application as you would normally. MacLightning will beep when it finds a suspect word (a word that it thinks is misspelled). Usually the mistake is obvious (just correct it as you normally would); or MacLightning is mistaken (just continue to type).

c.) But if you want to know how to spell the word, type ⌘-1. MacLightning will look up the "correct" spelling, highlight it in black, and display it in the dictionary for you. Here's what the dictionary page looks like:

MacLightning's Close Box: closes dictionary window
Walking fingers: click on them to look up whatever is in the active portion
Alphabet icons: open dictionary to clicked-on letter
Page-turner: turns dictionary pages, one page at a time

1 MacLightning will run in MacPaint, MacWrite, Word, and RSG.

2 If MacLightning can't find the dictionary, a dialog box may appear. If you are sure the dictionary is on a disk in one of your drives, click on the "drive" button, and open files, until you find it. Then double click "Merriam Webster's Ninth."
d.) If the highlighted word is correct, or if you see the correct word in the dictionary, click on it (highlighted or not), and type \( \% -2 \). **MacLightning** will correct the mistake automatically. If you decide that what you typed originally was correct, don’t click on anything, just type \( \% -2 \), and continue typing.

**To use the non-interactive mode,**

e.) Select the portion of text you would like to check.

f.) Pull down \( \sqrt{ } \) to **Check Selection**. An **Analysis** window will be displayed while **MacLightning** is checking the selection. When the checking process is over, a **Misspelled** window will appear.

g.) Double click on a misspelled word of interest in the **Misspelled** window. A dictionary page should pop up, with the suggested correct word highlighted.

h.) If the highlighted word is correct, or if you see the correct word in the dictionary, click on it (highlighted or not), and type \( \% -9 \). The **Search/Change** window should pop up.

i.) Click the “find next” button. The misspelled word will be displayed in context. If you want it corrected, click the “change” or “change then find” button.

j.) When you are through correcting that word, pull down \( \sqrt{ } \) to **Misspelled** to return to the **Misspelled** window. Repeat steps g through j until you have checked all suspect words. Click the “close book” or close box to get rid of the windows.

4. And the **Calculator** is handy to have every once in a while:

   ![Calculator](image)

   **This calculator can use scientific notation:** this means \( 6.02 \times 10^{23} \).

   To type exponents, click the E button.

   Otherwise, it works like a normal calculator.

   * means multiply or times: \( \times \)

   / means divide or "per": \( \div \)

   You can copy from the readout, and paste into your application.
5. How to change desk accessories which are installed on a disk:

   a.) Insert the Macintosh System Tools in the external drive. (If you don't have an 800K external drive, eject the destination disk, and insert System Tools in the internal drive.)

   b.) Open the directory windows of both disks, then open the System Tools system folder and utilities folder. Drag the Font/DA Mover and the "Desk Accessories" icon (it looks like a little suitcase) across to the destination disk window. If Mac asks you to exchange disks, do it. Eject System Tools if it isn't already ejected.

   c.) Boot the Font/DA Mover (double-click on the icon). When the dialog box opens, click the Desk Accessory button if it isn't already blackened. The desk accessories which are in the system now are listed on the left.

   d.) Select (that is, click, drag over, and highlight) the names of all the desk accessories you don't want in the left (systems) list of the dialog box. Hold the shift key down as you select, so you can get rid of everything you don't want on the first try. Now click the Remove button. Click "ok."

   e.) Hold the option button down and click Open. When the dialog box appears, select (click) "Desk Accessories" from the list that appears (you may have to click the little disk icon first, in order to find "Desk Accessories") and click Open. A list of the desk accessories available in the "Desk Accessories" file will appear on the right.

   f.) Select the Desk Accessories you want from this list. Hold the shift key down as you select, so you can get everything you want on the first try. When everything you want is highlighted, click <<Copy<< to install the selected desk accessories in Mac's system. The desk accessories you want should appear in the list on the left.

   g.) Click Remove. Click Quit. When you get back to the desk top, trash the Font/DA Mover and the "Desk Accessories" icons.
| 400K external drives, 193 | Brightness, 26, 171 |
| 512 Extended, 202 | Bring back the datafile, 156 |
| 800K external drives, 193 | burning out the printer, 218 |
| About the Finder, 175 | buttons and lights, 230 |
| absolute cell references, 144 | Cache, 198, 210, 219 |
| accent marks, 262 | Cairo, 259 |
| active cell, 131 | Calculation, 105, 132, 143 |
| active* button, 174 | calculator, 168, 192, 266 |
| Adapter Box, 21, 24 | can't find an icon, 222 |
| add your own menus, 169 | Can't throw away, 222 |
| add, 133 | caption* text, 38 |
| additional pages, 121 | categories, 137 |
| adjust the column widths, 142 | category values, 137 |
| advertisement, 34 | cell is selected, 131 |
| aircraft, 83 | cells, 131 |
| Alarm Clock, 192, 264 | Center text icon, 91 |
| Align text left, 92 | Change All, 84, 102 |
| align, 61 | change desk accessories, 267 |
| Align-center, 77 | change fonts, 16 |
| alphabetize your records, 139 | change paragraphs, 93 |
| alphabetize, 105, 156 | change startup disks, 94, 182 |
| analog board, 218 | change the fonts listed, 80 |
| anti-glare coating, 219 | change the fonts, 191 |
| antistatic bag, 218 | change the shape, 122 |
| AppleTalk "on-off" switch, 181 | change the spacing, 81 |
| AppleTalk connector, 236, 244 | change title11,36,76,90,115,130 |
| AppleTalk network 175, 235, 244 | changed* clipboards, 205 |
| applications, 173 | chart icon, 127 |
| arrange your records, 156 | chart-making features, 135 |
| Art Grabber+, 192, 209 | Chicago, 259 |
| artistic perspective, 55 | Chooser, 174, 192, 225, 235 |
| asterisk, 132 | clean the case, 219 |
| Athens, 259 | Clean Up, 182, 222 |
| autoscroll, 69 | Cleaning Pad, 240 |
| Avant Garde, 261 | Clear, 10, 54, 215 |
| Axis, 137 | click pixels, 52 |
| back-up, 156, 187 | clicking and dragging, 179 |
| Backspace, 10, 54, 77, 92, 179 | clicking on, 174 |
| backup copies, 215 | Clipboard File, 173 |
| bad* disk, 221 | clipboard memory, 205 |
| Bale, 22 | Clipboard, 178, 205, 215 |
| balloons, 37 | close box, 174 |
| Basic, 161 | color, 248 |
| beep, 223 | column chart, 135 |
| Best is slow, good-looking, 181 | column headings, 142 |
| between applications, 205 | column label, 131 |
| between layers, 69 | columns, 105, 117, 131, 138 |
| Bi-Directional, 24 | command key, 195 |
| bit-mapped, 45 | Command window, 165 |
| black and orange rollers, 243 | commands, 195 |
| black line is appearing, 244 | common center, 62 |
| blank page, 232 | Common Keybd Commands, 195 |
| blunder, 80 | computer files, 172 |
| bomb error, 222 | computer, 171 |
| Bookman, 261 | concentric circles, 17, 62 |
| booting the system, 171 | Configuration, 24 |
| border, 35 | Configure then install, 211 |
| both layers, 55 | connect the Scanner, 21 |
| bottom of the pile, 68 | connections, 235 |
| disconnect your Mac, 244 | constrain the line, 17, 62 |
| commands, 16, 36, 61 | continuous trail, 9, 54 |
| Contrast, 26 | copy a copy prot. disk, 193 |
| Control Panel, 192, 219, 263 | copy each disk, 188 |
| cool efficiently, 218 | copy protected, 193 |
| cooling fan, 219 | copy the formula across, 133 |
| coordinates, 132, 143 | copy won't work, 199 |
| copy the system fonts, 191 | Crash, 192, 210, 213, 219, 264 |
| crash, 156, 187 | crashes, 215 |
| Copy, 9, 77, 92, 178, 180 | criteria, 140 |
| Copying one entire disk, 189 | Cropper, 116 |
| copying processes, 187 | cumulative GPA, 144 |
| corrected entry, 132 | custom erasers, 8, 52 |
| correction, 92, 179 | custom pull down menus, 80 |
| Courier, 256 | customized work disk, 190 |
| cut, 6, 54, 77, 92, 180 | cut and paste, 166 |
| cutaway disk, 221 | damaged disk, 221 |
| dangling cable ends, 236 | data disk, 183, 202, 217 |
| data Procссsing Commands, 196 | Data-Procссsing Commands, 196 |
| database management, 149 | database, 138, 253 |
| database, 149, 253 | datafile, 154 |
| date, 82, 100, 156 | decimal tabs, 80 |
| decimal points, 80 | define a name, 143 |
| define a name, 143 | delete an entire row, 132 |
| delete by backspacing, 215 | delete, 180 |
| delete, 180 | Design Grids, 115 |
| Design Grids, 115 | desk accs, 174, 190, 192, 219, 263 |
| desktop, 172, 179, 182 | destination disk, 198 |
| dialog box, 176 | dictionary page, 265 |
| dictionary, 264 | different parts, 99 |
| digitized photograph, 21 | dip switches, 231 |
| disconnect computer, printer, 218 | directory window, 172 |
| disconnect your Mac, 244 | Disasters, 15, 60, 219 |
lasso, 9, 10
Laser Prep, 174
LaserWriter fonts, 237
LaserWriter won't print, 244
LaserWriter, 174, 181, 235, 248
lasso, 54, 55
layers, 45
Leaks, 15, 61
left alignment, 77
legal to copy, 193
Legend, 135
LET, 167
Light Intensity Gauge, 26, 27
limitation of MacPaint, 207
limitation of clipboard, 207
line graph, 136
line numbering, 106
Line Pattern, 64, 114, 123
line spacing, 81
line voltage, 217
lines, 16
link all, 117
link the new Text block, 122
Linker tool, 117
list window, 165
listed by student number, 144
Little black boxes, 136
little padlock, 216
live area, 115
load pin-feed paper, 228
load single sheet paper, 229
lock a disk, 216
Lock, 35, 64
Locking a file, 216
London, 259
Los Angeles, 259
lost file, 222
Mac128, 247
Mac 512 Extended, 248
Mac 512, 247
Mac II, 248
Mac Plus, 202
Mac Plus, 248
Mac SE, 248
MacDraw does text, 38
MacDraw window, 34
Macintosh, 171
MacLightning, 264
MacPaint is interrupted, 222
MacPaint window, 6, 176
macro icon, 127
macros, 140
MacTools, 221
MacWrite window, 78, 179
MacWrite, 251
Magnification, 25
magnified screen, 52
make copies, 202
make your own window, 168
malfunctions, 215
Manhattan, 256
manipulation of windows, 88
Manual Feed, 239
margins, 81, 91, 236
marquee, 7, 51, 178
master is "locked, 192
mathematical operations, 132
memory specified, 211
menu bar, 172
menu is created, 189
merge documents, 103
Microsoft BASIC 2.0, 161
Minifinder, 201
minus, 166
Misspelled window, 266
mistake, 15, 77, 92, 132, 155
Mobile, 257
modified ImageWriter cover, 23
Monaco, 256
more handles in polygon, 69
more space, 220
Mos Eisley, 259
mouse button, 172
mouse, 172
move it, 77
Move one cell down, 131
move your scrapbook, 206
multi-column newsletter, 109
multiple columns, 105
multiply, 132, 166
name the columns, 131
name the rows, 131
names are hidden, 145
Narrow Helvetica, 261
near letter quality, 230
New Century, 261
new folder, 182
new text blocks, 122
New York, 256
NEW, 166
next record, 156
no border, 9, 53
non-interactive mode, 266
Note Pad, 192
Nudge, 59
number lines or paragraphs, 106
number the pages, 81
object oriented, 45
objects, 34
off-on switch, 171
open a file from within, 184
Open, 177, 208
orange rollers, 243
organize your folder, 182
organized, 182
Orientation, 236
orig disk to destination disk, 188
out of paper, 239
out of room, 220
out of space, 83, 102
outlet checking devices, 218
outlet connection for Mac, 218
output window, 165
overflow indicator, 122
padlock, 216
Page breaks, 82, 100
page number, 78, 81
Page Preview, 95, 226, 237
Page scroll boxes, 114
Page Setup, 91, 179, 226, 236
paint brush, 8, 52
paint bucket, 6
paint layer, 45
Paint on Black, 53
Paint Opaque, 53
paint transparent, 8, 53
paint/draw toggle, 63
Palatino, 261
Palette, 62
paper cassette, 239
paper clamps, 228
paper clip in the little hole, 221
paper not feeding properly, 243
paper jam, 239, 243
paper release lever, 23, 228
Paper Thickness, 229
parachute, 83
paragraph text, 38
paragraphs numbered, 106
Paste, 9, 54, 77, 92, 180
Pattern Palette, 6
pattern scroll bar, 52
pattern, 62
Pause button, 27
Pen, 35
clock, 7, 52
percent equation, 143
picture catalog, 19, 63
Picture Block tool, 116
pie chart, 135
clock feed paper, 228
Platen, 22
plug it in, 238
plus, 166
pointer, 64, 66, 122, 172
clock feed tool, 9, 68
Power Converter, 22
clock failure, 15
clock supply, 218
clock precise positioning, 15, 61
Print Density Dial, 238
print head guide bar, 231
Print Head, 23, 227
PRINT is a statement, 165
print on both sides, 239
print quality button, 230
Print Records, 158
print, 95, 180
printer drivers, 173
printer puts out blank paper, 232
printer head, 231
printer icon, 174
printer port, 175, 236
printing gibberish, 231
problems, 60
product, 132
programming, 161
pulling down, 174
Puzzle, 192
quit from Switcher, 213
Quit, 94, 179, 182
RAM cache size, 199
| RAM Cache with Switcher, 199 | SCSI-port Hard Disk, 203 |
|RAM Cache, 198, 210, 264 | Search to Change, 216 |
|RAM caching, 219 | search, 140 |
|RAM disk, 199 | Select all of the text, 118 |
|RAM, 202, 205, 247 | Select all, 55, 139 |
| random access memory, 202 | Select Destination, 193 |
|ReadySetGo, 208, 251 | select large areas, 142 |
|Rearrange your grades, 144 | select many lines, 81 |
|reboot, diff. startup disk, 182 | select the block, 122 |
|record keeping, 149 | select, 66, 77, 92, 179 |
|record, 138, 155 | Selected Fill Pattern, 6, 53, 64 |
|recorded formatting, 106 | Selected Line Pattern, 53 |
|recorded series of steps, 141 | selected, 131 |
|Rectangles tool, 34 | selection rect, 9, 10, 54, 55, 178 |
|red light, green light, 243 | Selection Shortcuts, 197 |
|red paper error light, 230 | selection tricks, 81, 98 |
|Reduced View, 63 | self-test, 233 |
|reference box, 131 | Send Behind, 123 |
|reflow to fit, 122 | Send to Back, 68 |
|reinitializing the disk, 221 | separation belt, 243 |
|release levers, 228 | sequence of steps, 140 |
|remove desk accessories, 192 | serial port, 204 |
|remove listed fonts, 80 | Servicing the ImageWriter, 230 |
|Remove the printer head, 231 | Set Criteria, 140 |
|Rename the folder, 182 | Set Database, 139 |
|Reopen, 95 | set margins, 81 |
|Repaginate, 100 | Set Startup, 201, 220 |
|replace Ribbon Cartridge, 227 | set tabs, 80 |
|replace Toner Cartridge, 240 | Sevicing the LaserWriter, 242 |
| reset, 182 | Short Menus, 91 |
|resets, 94 | Show All Records, 156 |
|Rreshape, 69 | Show Page, 18 |
|return, 77, 93, 180 | shrinking, 56 |
|Revert, 15, 61 | Shut Down, 94 |
|ribbon cartridge, 23, 227 | shut up, 223 |
|rollers, 243 | shutdown procedure, 182 |
|ROM, 247 | single letter errors, 77 |
|room, 219 | single sheet, 229 |
|Rotate, 7, 39 | Size Box, 88, 174 |
|row number, 131 | Size to Fit, 115 |
|row, 131, 138 | slant images, 55 |
|RSG window, 114 | Smoothing, 236 |
|ruler, 34, 63, 77, 80, 91 | Snap On, 61 |
|rules (lines), 114, 123 | Snap to Off, 122 |
|Run Around, 122 | snap to, 115 |
|Run your program, 165 | sort it in reverse, 156 |
|RUN, 165 | sort your new list, 142 |
|running footer, 104 | Sort, 105, 139, 156 |
|sad face, 221 | space bar, 77, 93 |
|San Francisco, 259 | space, 83, 102 |
|Save Active Window, 195 | Spaces, 197 |
|Save As, 102, 220 | speaker volume, 223 |
|save space, 19, 63 | speed comparisons, 204 |
|Save, 176 | spelling checker, 104 |
|Scale, 56 | spelling checker, 264 |
|Scanner Cartridge, 22 | spits the disk back out, 221 |
|Scanner to Focus, 25 | split screens, 99 |
|Scrapbook File, 173 | spray can, 8 |
|Scrapbook, 178, 180, 192, 206 | spreadsheet, 131, 253 |
|screen brightness, 218 | sprocket/tractors, 228 |
|Scroll Arrow, 180 | stains, 242 |
|Scroll Bar, 77, 94, 180 | startup disk 95, 171, 182, 205, 223 |
|Scroll Box, 77, 180 | startup system, 222 |
|SCSI port, 203 | statement, 165 |
|static electricity, 218 | storing organized, 182 |
|stop the program, 166 | strange documents, 216 |
|stretch images, 10 | stretching, 55 |
|stripping your disks, 219 | student number, 145 |
|stupid blunder, 80, 98 | style sheet, 106 |
|superimpose letters, 10, 55 | sum, 133, 143 |
|SuperPaint, 50 |Surge Protectors, 218 |
|symbol, 260 | synthesizing new documents, 178 |
|System Tools, 190 | system error number, 222 |
|system folder, 173 | system fonts, 191 |
|System Errors, 222 | text, 38 |
|tab style, 93 | Table of Contents, 106 |
|tab well, 80 | test print is too light, 238 |
|test print, 181 | test light, 239 |
|test print, 181 | Text Block tool, 117 |
|text chain, 117 | text in MacPaint, 16 |
|text in SuperPaint, 66 | text tool, 6 |
|text tool, 6 | text, 38 |
|that item is locked, 216 | thickener lever, 229 |
|Thin Line Pattern, 123 | this isn't a Macintosh disk, 221 |
|this is a Macintosh disk, 221 | throw out its Finder, 220 |
|Thunderscan, 21 | tighten spacing, 16 |
|time, 82, 100 | Times, 154, 166, 204 |
|times, 154, 166, 204 | timing tape, 23 |
|Times, 256 | tiny black boxes, 35, 122 |
|title, 77 | to backtrack up, 131 |
|to back track up, 131 | toggle the pencil, 8 |
|toggle the pencil, 8 | Toner Cartridge Indicator, 240 |
|Toggle, 63 | Toner Cartridge, 240 |
|Toner Cartridge, 240 | tool palette, 26, 34 |
|toner cartridge wire cleaner, 242 | Toolboxes, 114 |
|Tools, 106 | total the column, 105 |
|tool, 6 | total, 133, 143 |
|text, 38 | trace edges, 10 |
|text, 38 |tractor/sprocket, 228 |
|text tool, 6 | transfer wire, 241 |
|text, 38 | transparent eraser, 8, 52 |
|text, 38 | trash, 182 |
|text, 38 | TurboCharger, 219 |
turn Mac on and off, 218
turn off the autoscroll, 69
turn off the computer, 94, 182
two layer selector, 55
two prong outlet, 218
two wire extension cord, 218
Two-Sided, 193
two-tone border, 68
underlining, 80
Undo command, 215
Undo, 15, 60, 80, 98
unerase, 40, 68
universal keybd commands, 195
unlink a text block, 122
unusual icons, 15
Value Axis, 137
Velcro, 23
Venice, 259
vented areas in the sides, 218
vents on the left side, 218
version (b) for binary, 163
version (d) for decimal, 163
view two different, 99
voltage source, 238
voltage surges, 217
what if?, 134
white type on a black, 123
whole page, 115
Widow Control, 91, 236
width of line, 35
wild cards, 140
window split bar, 99
window, 41, 168, 174
wipe the transfer wire, 241
wiping out all the junk, 220
Word window, 90
word processors, 251
Word, 251
Word-Procsng Commands, 196
wordwrap, 77, 93, 180
working disks, 202
worksheet icon, 127
worksheet, 131
Write the equation, 143
writing formulas, 132
X axis, 137
yellow light, 238
your icon names, 217
Zapf Chancery, 261
Zapf Dingbats, 260
zoom box, 88, 174
I teach high school Chemistry and Physics. About three years ago, I assigned a research paper to my physics classes, and provided several borrowed Apple Macintosh Computers for them to use in preparing the paper. Many of my students had not done word processing before; and none of them had used the Mac. The Mac is easy to use, but books that come with Macintosh software applications often do not take advantage of this virtue. They are not designed for people who want to be "up and running" as quickly as possible. So I wrote a simplified set of instructions for my students to use. When they used my instructions, these computer "illiterates" were usually able to start word processing in less than ten minutes with no additional assistance from me.

When the physics research papers were done, the main office secretary Corey Cork started using one of the Macs I had borrowed for the project. Like the kids, she also was able to use my instructions to start word processing within a few minutes. She also submitted the school bulletin and some correspondence for the principal on the first day she had the machine. But she wanted to do some database and spreadsheet work as well; so I wrote a set of instructions for these applications also.

Other secretaries and student aides used my instructions with equal success. That one little Apple Macintosh revolutionized the main office. Last year they were using two Macs and a LaserWriter. We got a Mac for the science department, and many other teachers started to use it. Our school newspaper used two more Macs to produce the school paper. So I wrote instructions for the graphics and page processing software too. As the use of the Macs around the High School grew, I continued to revise, and re-revise the instructions.

The much-revised pile of instructions began to look like a book, so we put the pile together and called it The Mac Idiot Book.

My wife Thea and I live in Sedro Woolley, Washington with our dog Rosie, and a HyperDrive equipped Mac Plus. We have three children. Walt is an Air Force pilot. Lara and Ted attend the University of Washington. Walt and Lara each have a Mac Plus; and Ted has a Mac SE. I have a Masters degree in science education from Western Washington University.

William W. Flint